CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR DESIGN AND TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

Marvin E. Frerking

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR DESIGN AND TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

Marvin E. Frerking

VAN NOSTRAND REINHOLD COMPANY
NEW YORK CINCINNATI ATLANTA DALLAS SAN FRANCISCO
LONDON TORONTO MELBOURNE

The author assumes no responsibility for the use of any circuitry, program, or technique contained in this publication nor is any patent license implied.

Van Nostrand Reinhold Company International Offices:
London Toronto Melbourne

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 77-17876
ISBN: 0-442-22459-1

Manufactured in the United States of America

Published by Van Nostrand Reinhold Company
135 West 50th Street, New York, N.Y. 10019
Published simultaneously in Canada by Van Nostrand Reinhold Ltd.

15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Frerking, Marvin E
Crystal oscillator design and temperature compensation.

Includes bibliographical references and index.
1. Oscillators, Crystal. 2. Oscillators, Transistor.
3. Frequency stability. 4. Temperature control.
I. Title.
TK7862.07F73 621.3815'33 77-17876
ISBN 0-442-22459-1

Foreword

Crystal oscillators have been in use now for well over 50 years—one of the first was built by W. G. Cady in 1921. Today, millions of them are made every year, covering a range of frequencies from a few Kilohertz to several hundred Megahertz and a range of stabilities from a fraction of one percent to a few parts in ten to the thirteenth, with most of them, by far, still in the range of several tens of parts per million. Their major application has long been the stabilization of frequencies in transmitters and receivers, and indeed, the utilization of the frequency spectrum would be in utter chaos, and the communication systems as we know them today unthinkable, without crystal oscillators.

With the need to accommodate ever increasing numbers of users in a limited spectrum space, this traditional application will continue to grow for the foreseeable future, and ever tighter tolerances will have to be met by an ever larger percentage of these devices.

Narrowing the channel spacing—with its concomitant requirements for increasingly more stable carrier frequencies—is but one of the alternatives to increase the number of potential users of the frequency spectrum. Subdividing the time during which a group of users has access to a given channel is another; and many modern radio transmission systems make use of this principle. Here again, the crystal oscillator plays a dominant role; not to control the carrier frequency, but to keep the time slots for the various users coordinated, that is, to serve as the clock rate generator of the systems clocks in transmitters and receivers. The demands on oscillator performance are often even more stringent in this application than for carrier stabilization alone.

The use of crystal oscillators as clock rate generators has seen a rate of growth in the recent past that is nothing short of explosive, with no end in sight yet, in applications that are quite unrelated to the communications field, such as in the quartz wrist watch and in the microprocessor. Other uses include reference standards in frequency counters and time interval meters, gauges for temperature and pressure, and instruments for the measurement of mass changes for scientific and environmental sensing purposes, to name just a few.

In short, the crystal oscillator is now more in demand than ever, and the need for improved performance in mass producible devices becomes more urgent with

nearly every new application. An increasing number of engineers, therefore, find themselves confronted with the challenge of designing crystal oscillators with near optimum performance, as tailored to a specific application. Those new in the field are bound to discover very soon that there is no substitute for a considerable amount of hands-on experience. Rarely can a circuit reported on in the literature be used without modifications, and details, not discussed fully in the descriptions provided, are often found to be significant.

The possible combinations of circuit elements that make a viable oscillator are nearly limitless, and while most experienced designers have gravitated toward a few basic configurations, no one circuit, or even small group of circuits, has as yet evolved that is, in all details, universally suitable. Nor does it appear likely that this will happen in the foreseeable future, if for no other reason than because new active devices are continually being brought to market, with often significant advantages for use in oscillator circuits, but requiring different conditions for proper operation. The general principles of crystal oscillator design, however, remain.

The basic building blocks of a crystal oscillator are the feedback circuit containing the crystal unit; the amplifier containing one or more active devices; and circuitry or devices such as needed for modulation, temperature compensation or control, etc.

What is needed most by the circuit designer is a clear approach to understanding the interrelationship of the various circuit elements within each of these building blocks and of the blocks with one another. And this holds true whether the goal is an oscillator, hand-tailored in small quantities to achieve the highest performance possible, or mass produced and capable of meeting the specified requirements under worst case conditions. While such approaches do exist, their exposition in the literature is scarce. It is to fill this void that Mr. Frerking has written this book.

M. E. Frerking is surely one of the most accomplished and innovative practitioners of the art of crystal oscillator design, with extensive experience in the development of high performance oscillators for high volume use. In his book he shares with the reader the design techniques that he has found most useful and conveys a wealth of practical information that will be of immediate use to engineers who are faced with the challenge of designing a crystal oscillator for today's more demanding applications.

Mr. Frerking's book is a timely, and most welcome, major addition to the literature on crystal oscillators.

Erich Hafner, PHD.
Supervisory Research Physicist
US Army Electronics Technology & Devices Laboratory
Fort Monmouth, NJ

Acknowledgments

The author wishes to express his sincere appreciation to the Collins Telecommunications Products Division of Rockwell International whose support and facilities made this work possible, and to those engineers working in the field of frequency control whose contributions have resulted in many of the techniques described in this book.

The author would also like to acknowledge the assistance rendered by Dr. John Robinson and Mr. H. Paul Brower for their suggestions and assistance in preparing the manuscript.

List of Symbols

Symbol	Description
b_f	forward transfer susceptance
b_i	input susceptance
b_o	output susceptance
b_r	reverse transfer susceptance
C_0	shunt capacity across crystal
C_1	motional arm capacitance
f_a	antiresonant frequency
f_L	frequency at load capacitance C_L
f_s	series resonant frequency
g_f	forward transfer conductance
g_f(min)	minimum forward transfer conductance required for oscillation
g_i	input conductance
g_m	forward transfer conductance (transconductance)
g_o	output conductance
g_r	reverse transfer conductance
h_f	forward current transfer ratio
h_i	input impedance
K	Boltzman's constant 1.38×10^{-23} J/°K
L_1	motional arm inductance
P_c	power dissipated in crystal
ppm	parts per million
q	electron charge 1.602×10^{-19} C
R_1	motional arm resistance
R_e	equivalent resistance of crystal
R_{in}	parallel input resistance
R_L	external load resistance
R_{max}	maximum resistance crystal oscillator is capable of handling

R_T	total resistive component of collector load
ω_T	angular frequency at which the common emitter current gain has decreased to unity
X_e	equivalent reactance of crystal
y_f	forward transfer admittance
y_i	input admittance
y_o	output admittance
y_r	reverse transfer admittance
Z_f	forward transfer impedance
Z_i	input impedance
Z_o	output impedance
Z_r	reverse transfer impedance

Contents

CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR DESIGN AND TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

1
Introduction

The increasing demand in radio communications for channel space as well as the use of sophisticated navigation systems and data transmission has resulted in increased frequency stability requirements in many items of equipment. As a result, the demands on crystal oscillators have become more stringent. In many cases, it is no longer sufficient merely to use a crystal oscillator; now it is necessary to take measures to ensure that the crystal oscillator will possess a high degree of frequency stability. Designs of this type are often quite difficult for the engineer who has had little or no prior experience with crystal oscillators; consequently, much of the material in this book is directed to the individual who has a good background in circuit theory but who is not necessarily experienced with crystal oscillator design.

The book deals primarily with transistor oscillators, since nearly all precision oscillators at the present time use discrete transistors. The use of gate oscillators and clock oscillator integrated circuits is widespread in lower stability applications, and these are discussed in Chapter 7.

A practical treatment of quartz crystal resonators is presented in Chapter 5 which gives the designer a good working knowledge of the devices. In Chapter 6, the nonlinear properties of transistors are explored to enable prediction of the amplitude of oscillation and the harmonic content for various oscillators. Chapter 7 then brings together all the information already presented and presents the actual design equations for oscillators covering the entire frequency spectrum from several kHz to 150 MHz. It also includes over 20 tested circuits with component values.

Crystal oscillators, in general, are more critical than most electronic circuits. As such, it behooves the design engineer to take special precautions to ensure that his oscillator circuit will perform

properly when produced in quantity. Chapter 8 consists of a discussion of several tests which should be conducted to determine with reasonable assurance whether the circuit will perform properly when produced in quantity.

Crystal ovens, discussed briefly in Chapter 9, are used almost exclusively to achieve stabilities better than 5×10^8. The treatment of ovens is limited primarily to a description of the basic techniques and what can be achieved, no attempt is made to give detailed design information.

The spectral purity of crystal oscillators may be an important consideration in some applications and, although not treated in this book, should not be overlooked. The reader is directed to numerous articles in the literature for designs of this type.

A unique system is presented in Chapter 10, whereby a microprocessor can be used to temperature-compensate a crystal oscillator. This system is compared with three other methods for temperature compensation. Chapter 10 also contains a thorough treatment of temperature compensation in general, which enables the average design engineer to accomplish successful compensation of semiprecision oscillators, improving the stability by as much as two orders of magnitude.

Many of the derivations required to develop the design equations are carried out in the appendices, but the conclusions are presented in the main text. This results in an easily readable volume with the details still available for those interested in probing deeper into the mechanics of the derivations and the assumptions made.

2

Basic Oscillator Theory

In undertaking the design of a crystal oscillator, an understanding of basic oscillator principles is not only desirable but essential. Therefore, a brief explanation of the operation of a crystal oscillator is given here. Basically, a crystal oscillator can be thought of as a closed loop system composed of an amplifier and a feedback network containing the crystal. Amplitude of oscillation builds up to the point where nonlinearities decrease the loop gain to unity. The frequency adjusts itself so that the total phase shift around the loop is 0 or 360 degrees. The crystal, which has a large reactance-frequency slope, is located in the feedback network at a point where it has the maximum influence on the frequency of oscillation. A crystal oscillator is unique in that the impedance of the crystal changes so rapidly with frequency that all other circuit components can be considered to be of constant reactance, this reactance being calculated at the nominal frequency of the crystal. The frequency of oscillation will adjust itself so that the crystal presents a reactance to the circuit which will satisfy the phase requirement. If the circuit is such that a loop gain greater than unity does not exist at a frequency where the phase requirement can be met, oscillation will not occur.

The application of these principles to oscillator design usually is difficult because many factors play an important part in the operation. As a result, the design of transistorized crystal oscillators is often a "cut and try" procedure.

Methods have been developed for predicting the amplitude of oscillation based on the small-signal loop gain. The reduction in gain for a transistor operating at large signal values is predictable and has been plotted as a function of the ac base-to-emitter voltage. Since it is known that the loop gain after equilibrium has been reached will be unity, the reduction factor is numerically equal to the small-signal loop gain. Using this value, the amplitude of oscillation can be predicted from the graphs.

3
Methods of Design

Three methods of design are presented in this book, each of which has its advantages. The first, which is highly experimental, consists of giving a qualitative explanation of how the circuit works and presenting a number of typical schematic diagrams for that oscillator configuration. The second method consists of deriving the equations for oscillation in terms of the *Y*-parameters of the transistor. The third method consists of measuring the gain and input impedance of the transistor as a function of its load impedance. This information is used to calculate component values for the circuit with relatively simple equations. The amplitude of oscillation can then be predicted using the methods of paragraph 3.4.

3.1. EXPERIMENTAL METHOD OF DESIGN

The experimental method of design consists of finding a suitable circuit which can be modified and/or optimized to meet a particular set of requirements. To assist in this design approach, Chapter 7 contains a number of laboratory tested oscillator circuits and a qualitative explanation of their operation. The appropriate circuit type most suited for a particular application can be selected with the aid of Table 7-1. The individual circuits have not been designed or optimized with respect to any particular performance characteristic, but sufficient reserve gain has been provided to allow some modification.

The following precautionary items must be presented in regard to the use or modification of any of these circuits:

a. Since the mechanical arrangement of a circuit usually affects its performance, complete testing of the circuit in accordance with Chapter 8 should be accomplished even though the circuit values presented are used.

b. Substitution of transistors or gates for those specified should be within the same basic family and power level. Indiscriminate substitution of active element types may greatly change the performance of a given oscillator circuit.

3.2. *Y*-PARAMETER METHOD OF DESIGN

The second approach to oscillator design consists of using the *Y*-parameters of the transistor (see Chapter 6). The equations for oscillation are derived in the following manner. Using the block diagram of Figure 3-1, the complex equation for oscillation can be shown (see Appendix A) to be:

$$y_f Z_f + y_i Z_o + y_o Z_i + y_r Z_r + \Delta y \, \Delta Z + 1 = 0, \qquad (3\text{-}1)$$

where

$$\Delta y = y_o y_i - y_f y_r, \qquad \Delta Z = Z_o Z_i - Z_f Z_r.$$

> Although any set of parameters may be used for the amplifier and any set for the feedback network, it is convenient to use *Y*-parameters for the amplifier and *Z*-parameters for the feedback network. . . . It is important to note that the use of equation (3-1) implies the assumption that the amplifier is a linear circuit. The application of equation (3-1) therefore can yield no information concerning harmonic generation or the limiting of amplitude as the result of dependence of circuit parameters upon amplitude. The assumption that the amplifier is linear is not valid at large amplitudes. At large amplitudes, the *Y*-parameters therefore must be defined as the ratios of fundamental components of current to fundamental components of voltage![41]

The equations for specific oscillator types are derived by determining the *Z*-parameters of the feedback network and substituting them

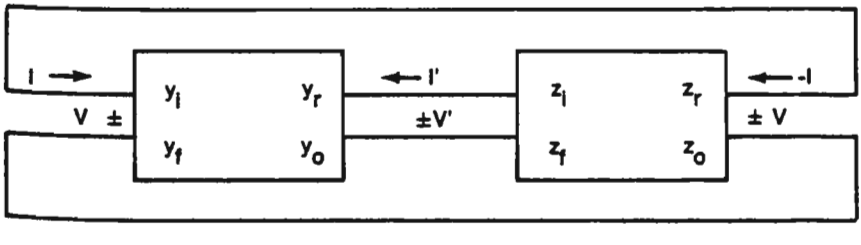


Figure 3-1. Block diagram of a transistorized crystal oscillator.

into equation (3-1). The complex equation is then separated into real and imaginary parts. The real part generally yields an expression for the transconductance g_f required for oscillation while the imaginary part yields an expression for the crystal reactance X_L necessary to satisfy the phase shift requirement. The equations and the assumptions made are presented for the various oscillators in Chapter 7.

Since the equations in general do not give highly accurate results, it is well to use them in connection with the experimental approach (see section 3.1). However, the equations do give an indication of how changing a given component will affect the overall performance and thus are often quite useful. The equations are generally of the form

$$g_f = f_1(a, b, c, d, \ldots)$$
$$X_L = f_2(a, b, c, d, \ldots),$$

where a, b, c, d . . . represent various components and parameters of the circuit; X_L is the crystal reactance; and g_f is the small-signal transconductance required for oscillation to begin. The ratio g_f (transistor)/g_f (required) is a measure of the loop gain, which must be greater than unity for oscillations to build up. Generally, if the loop gain is greater than 2 to 3, satisfactory operation results. If limiting

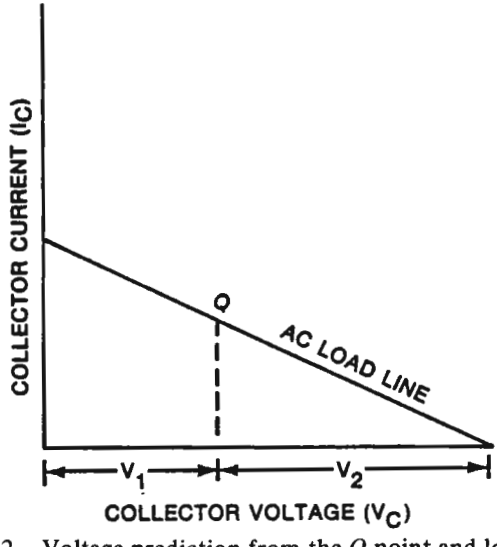


Figure 3-2. Voltage prediction from the Q-point and load line.[35]

takes place as a result of the base-to-emitter junction being cut off during part of the cycle, the amplitude of oscillation can be predicted using Figure 3-6. Limiting of this type generally results in good frequency stability. The oscillator may be biased to produce collector limiting. If this is the case, the output voltage can be determined by constructing a load line as shown in Figure 3-2. The peak output voltage will be approximately V_1 or V_2, whichever is smaller. This is a rule of thumb only and not highly accurate.

The oscillator should be designed to require the same crystal reactance (X_L) as that called out by the crystal specification for on-frequency operation. In the case of series resonant crystals, $X_L = 0$.

3.3. POWER GAIN METHOD OF DESIGN*

The third approach to oscillator design is basically a power gain analysis. Phase shift considerations are taken care of experimentally by getting the crystal to operate on frequency. The usefulness of this design approach generally is limited to series mode oscillators which can be represented by the block diagram of Figure 3-3.

The power gain required from the transistor must be sufficient to supply the output power, power losses, and the input power required

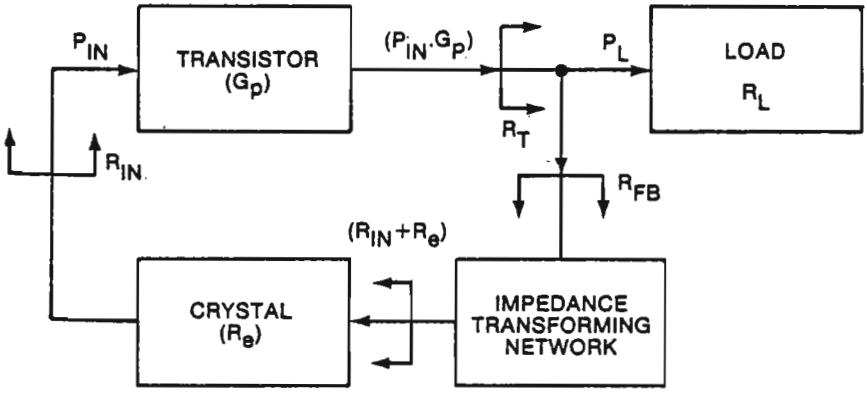


Figure 3-3. High-frequency oscillator elements.

*The results presented here are essentially a summary of the Power Gain Method of design developed under sponsorship of the US Army Electronics Command, see reference 31.

for the transistor:

$$(P_{\text{in}}\, G_P) = P_L + P_{\text{in}} + P_d, \tag{3-2}$$

where

P_{in} = input power to transistor,
G_P = power gain of transistor,
P_L = output power to an external load, and
P_d = all other power losses within the oscillator circuit.

Using equation (3-2), an oscillator may be designed as follows:

A. *Determine the transistor power gain (experimentally).*

Step 1. Connect the transistor as a single-tuned amplifier in the grounded-base or grounded-emitter configuration, whichever is to be used in the type of oscillator being designed. A circuit similar to that of Figure 3-4 may be used. The circuit should be arranged so that it can be mounted on the impedance measuring device such as a network analyzer or *RX* meter with the input near the ungrounded terminal. Provisions should be made for connecting RF voltmeters to the input and output of the transistor.

Step 2. Measure the power gain and input impedance as a function of the load resistance R_T.*

(a) For various values of load resistance, determine the power gain and the input impedance, increasing the value of the load resistor at each step until instability occurs.
(b) Plot the power gain and input resistance versus load resistance. A graph similar to that of Figure 3-5 should result.
(c) From the power gain graph, select a value R_T giving a gain of 200–300, and note the input resistance R_{in} at the power gain selected.

B. *Calculate the feedback network.* Power gain values determined in A include all circuit losses that will be present in the oscillator

*The maximum input voltage that can be applied to the transistor before nonlinearity occurs is about 10 mV. Since the output of the Boonton *RX* meter is about 100 mV, it must be modified. The addition of an appropriate level control is described fully in the *RX* meter instruction manual. In this discussion, R_T refers to the total load resistance seen by the collector. R_L, the external load, is included in R_T.

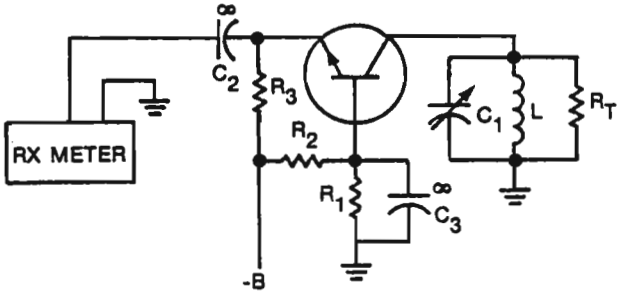


Figure 3-4. Single-tuned amplifier connection.

except the crystal loss. The crystal loss is included in the following manner.

Step 1. The ratio of the total feedback power to the transistor input power is given by

$$\frac{P_{FB}}{P_{in}} \doteq \frac{(R_{in} + R_e)}{R_{in}}, \tag{3-3}$$

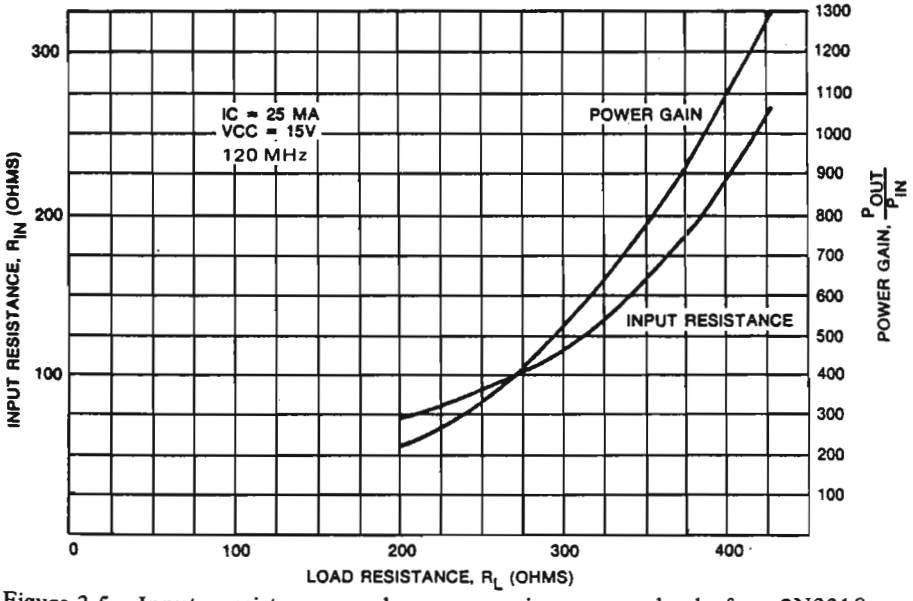


Figure 3-5. Input resistance and power gain versus load for 2N2218 transistor.[28, 29]

where

P_{FB} = total feedback power,
P_{in} = the power input to the active device,
R_{in} = the input resistance of the transistor, and
R_e = the series resonant resistance of the crystal.

Incorporating this loss due to the crystal into the input circuit gives the modified power gain G_p' as

$$G_p' = \frac{G_p R_{in}}{(R_{in} + R_e)}. \tag{3-4}$$

Step 2. The next step is to determine the ratio of the output power to the feedback power. All losses are accounted for now; therefore,

$$P_o = P_L + P_{FB}. \tag{3-5}$$

The output power also is given by

$$P_o = (P_{FB} G_p'). \tag{3-6}$$

Combining equations (3-5) and (3-6) gives

$$(P_{FB} G_p') = P_L + P_{FB}, \tag{3-7}$$

or

$$P_{FB} = \frac{P_L}{(G_p' - 1)}. \tag{3-8}$$

P_{FB} can be represented by an equivalent resistor R_{FB} (whose power dissipation is P_{FB} placed in parallel with the external load R_L. R_L and R_{FB} are subjected to the same voltage; therefore, the resistance ratio is inverse to the power ratio, and

$$R_{FB} = R_L (G_p' - 1). \tag{3-9}$$

Now R_T, the total load resistance, is the parallel combination of R_{FB} and R_L; using this with equation (3-9) and rearranging terms gives

$$R_L = \frac{R_T G_p'}{(G_p' - 1)} \tag{3-10}$$

and

$$R_{FB} = R_T G_p'. \tag{3-11}$$

Using equations (3-10) and (3-11), the values of R_{FB} and R_L can be determined. The use of a G_p' of one-third to one-half the value determined from equation (3-4) should provide an adequate feedback power safety factor.

Step 3. The last step in the procedure is the determination of the required impedance transformation ratio of the feedback circuit. This is the ratio of R_{FB} to $(R_{in} + R_e)$ or

$$\text{Required impedance transformation ratio} = \frac{R_{FB}}{(R_{in} + R_e)}. \tag{3-12}$$

There are several types of impedance transforming networks which can be used, e.g., a capacitive tap on the output tuned circuit, a pi network, or a transformer. The properties of specific networks are treated briefly with the discussion of particular oscillator circuits in Chapter 7. Detailed discussions of several feedback networks are given in references 31, 32, and 35.

The power gain approach to the design of crystal oscillators is one of the few approaches simple enough to be of practical value. Accuracy is only fair and the difference from actual oscillator loop gain normally will not exceed 2 or 3. Also, a considerable amount of component value adjusting usually is necessary to get the crystal to operate on frequency. The approach is of the most value in designing oscillators of high frequency and high output power.

In general, the *Y*-parameter approach is a better design method for low-power oscillators. (If, however, the *Y*-parameters of a transistor are not known, or if from other considerations the reader elects to use the power gain method, it is suggested that reference 31 be consulted, since only the principles of this approach have been outlined here, and a detailed explanation of each step is given in the reference.)

3.4. NONLINEAR MODIFICATIONS

The small-signal analysis discussed in section 3.2 is valid until the ac base-to-emitter voltage builds up to about 10 mV. For values greater

than this, significant changes occur in the forward transconductance as well as the input and output impedances. The magnitude of these changes is derived in Appendix G for the basic transistor and in Appendix H for a transistor with emitter degeneration. If the initial loop gain determined by g_f (transistor)/g_f (required) is calculated, the result can then be used to predict the base-to-emitter voltage, the input and output impedances, the harmonic current, and the bias shift. The curves of Figure 3-6 illustrate the method.

Suppose that the initial loop gain is 3. After the amplitude of oscillation has built up to its equilibrium value, the actual loop gain will be unity. Therefore the ratio g_m/g_{m0} must be 0.333. From Figure 3-6 we see that V, the normalized ac base-to-emitter voltage, will be 5.7. The actual base voltage is then 5.7 KT/q where

K = Boltzman's constant, 1.38×10^{-23} J/°K;
q = electron charge, 1.602×10^{-19} C; and
T = temperature in °K.

At room temperature $KT/q \doteq 26$ mV; therefore, the actual voltage is $5.7 \times 26 = 148.2$ mV.

Once the base voltage is known, it is normally fairly straightforward to calculate the voltage in any other part of the circuit.

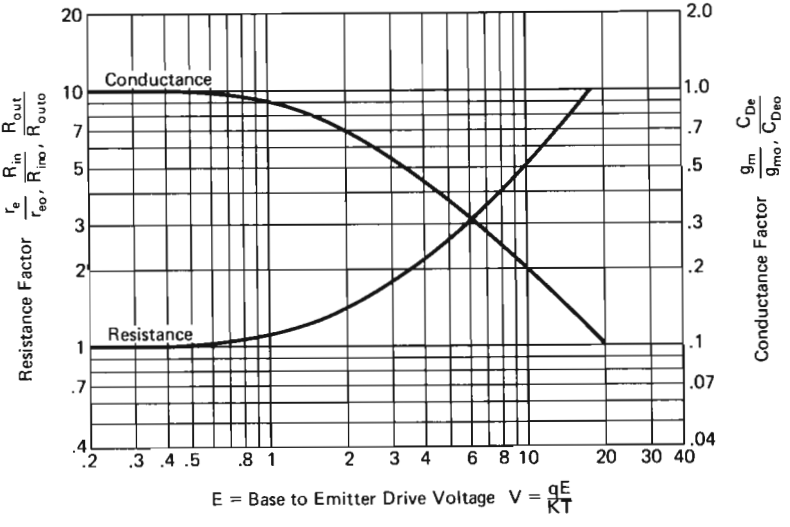


Figure 3-6. Transistor parameters versus signal voltage.

It should be noted that the input capacitance is reduced by the same ratio as the small-signal loop gain, which results in a slight increase in frequency.

Curves showing the harmonic currents as well as the bias shift are presented in Chapter 6. They may be useful in predicting the performance of the oscillator if a harmonic of the fundamental frequency is used.

Specific nonlinear equations, based on the principle of harmonic balance, are also derived for the Colpitts oscillator in Appendix I, and the results are presented in section 7.3.

4
Oscillator Frequency Stability

The term *frequency stability* is a generic term which means a variety of things to different people depending on their individual interests. In its broadest concept, it means the degree of constancy of the frequency of an oscillator under a particular set of conditions. In crystal oscillator applications, there are several different types of frequency stability:

a. Frequency stability as affected by environmental changes consisting primarily of temperature, voltage, and load variations.
b. Long-term frequency drift as affected by aging of the quartz crystal resonator.
c. Short-term frequency stability or phase stability.

Frequency stability is used in this book to mean either a or b, both of which will be discussed in this chapter. In some specifications frequency stability is meant to be the sum of a and b; however, because so much misunderstanding has resulted, it is recommended that when this usage is adopted it should be clearly stated that frequency stability is meant to include both environmental stability and aging for a specified time period. The term frequency accuracy is also sometimes specified and is a measure of the actual frequency compared to an established standard. It results from the initial setting error and the stability.

4.1. TEMPERATURE EFFECTS ON FREQUENCY

The frequency of a crystal oscillator is affected by changes in ambient temperature. These changes in temperature can affect the value of any of the components which comprise the oscillator circuit. If these component variations do not cancel each other, a change in the

nominal operating frequency of the oscillator will result. The frequency determining component most severely affected by any temperature change is the quartz crystal. This effect is shown graphically for AT-cut crystals in Chapter 5, Figure 5-6. (A discussion of the temperature coefficients of other crystal cuts can be found in reference 6.)

In some applications, sufficient frequency stability can be obtained from the quartz crystal. The limit obtainable over the full military temperature range of −55°C to +105°C with an AT-cut crystal is approximately ±0.002 percent. This limit can be improved within a reduced temperature range. Many applications require stabilities considerably better. In such cases, two methods are available for eliminating or reducing the effects of temperature changes on the crystal oscillator, namely, temperature control and temperature compensation.

4.1.1. Temperature Control

The degree of temperature control required on a particular oscillator is determined primarily by the specifications of the system in which it is to be used. Stabilities of approximately ±5 parts in 10^7 can be obtained using plug-in crystal ovens with the oscillator circuitry external to the oven. Stabilities to several parts in 10^9 can be obtained with proportionally controlled ovens containing the crystal and oscillator circuitry. (A proportionally controlled oven uses a temperature-controlling system in which the power supplied to the oven is proportional to the heat loss. (Refer to section 9.3.) For stabilities better than 5 parts in 10^9, it is generally necessary to use a two-stage oven. This may be a combination of two ovens with a single control circuit or two independent proportionally controlled ovens.

Crystal ovens have several disadvantages which tend to limit their usage in some applications. These are as follows:

1. A warm-up time is required.
2. The volume is relatively large.
3. The power consumption is high.
4. The reliability of the components in the oven is reduced if the application requires frequent turning on and off of the oven.

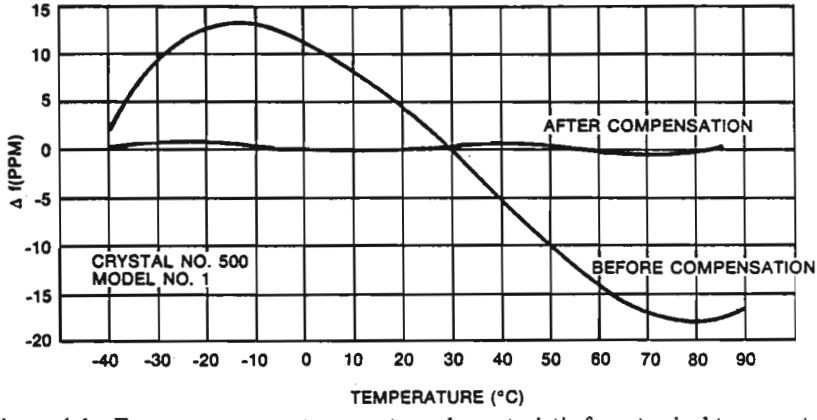


Figure 4-1. Frequency versus temperature characteristic for a typical temperature-compensated crystal oscillator.

4.1.2. Temperature Compensation

Temperature compensation of crystal oscillators is very practical to achieve frequency stabilities in the range of ±10 to ±0.5 ppm. With considerable care, compensation to ±0.05 ppm is possible.

Temperature compensation is generally achieved by placing a voltage variable capacitor in series with the crystal. A voltage is then applied to the capacitor, which pulls the crystal frequency by precisely the amount that it drifted in temperature but in the opposite direction. The voltage is generated either by a thermistor–resistor analog network or by a digital system followed by a digital-to-analog converter.

The means for temperature compensation are discussed in considerable detail in Chapter 10. Figure 4-1 shows the improvement in frequency that was achieved using a three-thermistor analog network in a 3.2-MHz crystal oscillator.

4.2. LONG-TERM FREQUENCY DRIFT

The phrase *long-term frequency drift* usually refers to the gradual drift in average frequency of an oscillator due to aging of components, notably the quartz crystal. It is not meant to include the short-term variations discussed in section 4.3 or the deviations due to ambient

temperature change discussed in section 4.1. The aging of a quartz crystal itself is discussed in section 5.7.

4.3. SHORT-TERM FREQUENCY STABILITY

The phrase *short-term frequency stability* refers to changes in the oscillator frequency which result from interaction of the desired signal with an unwanted signal or noise. It is not meant to include frequency variations due to component aging or ambient temperature change. The type of interaction may be simple superposition, amplitude modulation, frequency modulation, phase modulation, or any combination thereof. Only in the case of FM or PM is there a true change in frequency. The other types may cause an apparent change in frequency which may vary with different frequency-measuring techniques. For this reason, the signal-to-noise ratio or sideband level of an oscillator is sometimes specified. If phase modulation is the only type of interaction being considered, or is predominant, the term *phase stability* may be used in place of short-term frequency stability. Frequency modulation and phase modulation are related by the modulation frequency. If the undesirable signal is sinusoidal, this relationship is given by

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta f}{f_m}$$

where $\Delta\theta$ is the peak phase deviation in radians, Δf is the peak carrier frequency deviation, and f_m is the frequency of the undesirable signal. .

As is the case of any FM or PM signal, theoretically an infinite number of sidebands exist. The total phase deviation is usually so small with crystal oscillators, however, that only the first pair of sidebands is significant. The relationship between these sidebands and the phase deviation is given in Figure 4-2. This graph does not consider the presence of AM. The mathematical development of Figure 4-2 is given in Appendix J. In the case of noise modulation, the sideband levels are often specified in decibels below the carrier per hertz of bandwidth (dB/Hz). For a narrow-bandwidth measurement system, pure FM or PM noise modulation results in the same sideband level as shown in Figure 4-2. Here the sideband level is in-

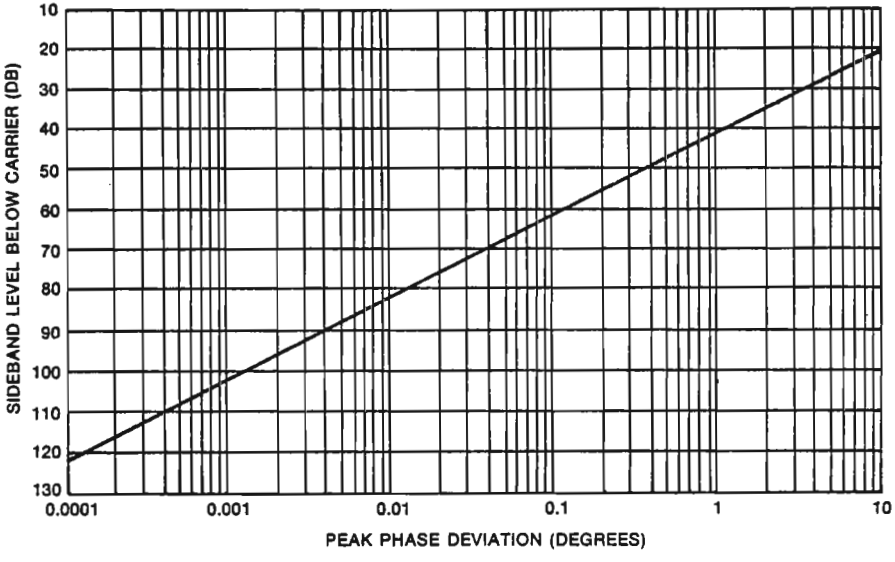


Figure 4-2. Sideband level versus phase deviation.

terpreted to be the ratio of the rms value of the noise sideband to the rms value of the carrier, and the abscissa is $\sqrt{2}$ times the rms phase deviation. For noise simply added to the signal, the sidebands are uncorrelated and the apparent phase deviation is 3 dB lower for the same sideband level. The rms phase jitter is then given by $\Delta\theta = 10^{-dB/20}$ rad rms, where dB refers to the level of either the upper or lower sideband in a bandwidth numerically equal to the baseband in which the phase jitter is measured.*

In many cases short-term frequency stability is best specified in the time domain and is given as the rms fractional frequency deviation for some specified measurement time τ. For example a precision crystal oscillator might exhibit a short-term stability of 1×10^{-11} rms for one-second averaging times. If a large number of frequency measurements, say n, are made using an averaging time of τ seconds, the standard deviation can be computed using the statistical relationship

*Short-term frequency stability and/or phase noise can be conveniently measured using a phase-locked loop with two identical oscillators, with a spectrum analyzer, a computing frequency counter, or a frequency stability analyzer.

$$\sigma_n^2(\Delta f) = \frac{1}{n-1}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n} (f_i)^2 - \frac{1}{n}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i\right)^2\right]. \tag{4-1}$$

It has been found, however, that for large numbers of measurements, the elapse time is so large that frequency aging and temperature effects tend to influence the results and σ becomes a function of how long the test was run. A better method and one which has become standard is to use the Allan variance. In using this method individual variances are computed from adjacent pairs of frequency readings and the average of the variances forms the basis for the definition. Taking $n = 2$, equation (4-1) simplifies to

$$\sigma_2^2(\Delta f) = \frac{(f_1 - f_2)^2}{2}. \tag{4-2}$$

The frequency stability is then found by taking the square root of the average of the variances, and is

$$\sigma_y(\tau) = \left[\frac{1}{2N}\sum_{i=1}^{N} (f_{2i} - f_{2i-1})^2\right]^{1/2} \tag{4-3}$$

where τ is the measurement time for each frequency reading with no dead time between readings, and N is the number of measurement pairs used. A fairly large number of readings is required to compute a reliable value of $\sigma_y(\tau)$, and $N = 100$ is quite common.

The time domain method of specifying short-term frequency stability is useful for counting intervals ranging from less than a millisecond to about 100 seconds. It is possible to convert from time domain measurements to frequency domain performance and vice versa. Indeed this is a very powerful method of determining the frequency spectral content of an oscillator within a fraction of 1 Hz of the carrier.[51] In general, however, it is best to specify the characteristic which is actually important to the system. For example if it is the phase stability that is important than this should be specified.

The art of designing oscillators for best short-term frequency stability is not treated in this book; however, it should be pointed out that it is a very important consideration in the design of some oscillators. A rigorous definition of short-term frequency stability is itself quite complex, and the reader is referred to reference 52 for a comprehensive treatment of the subject.

5
Quartz Crystal Resonators

The importance of quartz crystal resonators in electronics results from their extremely high Q, relatively small size, and excellent temperature stability.

A quartz crystal resonator utilizes the piezoelectric properties of quartz. If a stress is applied to a crystal in a certain direction, electric charges appear in a perpendicular direction. Conversely, if an electric field is applied, it will cause mechanical deflection of the crystal. In a quartz crystal resonator, a thin slab of quartz is placed between two electrodes. An alternating voltage applied to these electrodes causes the quartz to vibrate. If the frequency of this voltage is very near the mechanical resonance of the quartz slab, the amplitude of the vibration will become very large. The strain of these vibrations causes the quartz to produce a sinusoidal electric field which controls the effective impedance between the two electrodes. This impedance is strongly dependent on the excitation frequency and possesses an extremely high Q.

Electrically, a quartz crystal can be represented by the equivalent circuit of Figures 5-1 and 5-2 where the series combination R_1, L_1, and C_1 represent the quartz, and C_0 represents the shunt capacitance of the electrodes in parallel with the holder capacitance. The inductor L_1 is a function of the mass of the quartz, while C_1 is associated with its stiffness. The resistor R_1 results from the loss in the quartz and in the mounting arrangement. The parameters of the equivalent circuit can be measured quite accurately using the crystal impedance (CI) meters,* vector voltmeters,[14,49] or bridge measurement tech-

*RFL Industries, Boonton, NJ, Model 5950, with plug-in units to cover frequency of interest. Old crystal impedance meters are TS-710/TSM, 10–1100 kHz, TS-630/TSM, 1–15 MHz; TS-683/TSM, 10–140 MHz; and AN/TSM-15, 75–200 MHz.

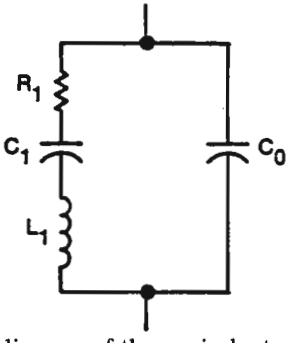


Figure 5-1. Simplified diagram of the equivalent circuit of a quartz crystal

niques.[19] A reactance-frequency plot of the equivalent circuit is given in Figure 5-3, and a reactance–resistance plot is given in Figure 5-4. The portions circled on these figures are expanded in Figure 5-5.

Several equations have been derived in Appendix K which are useful when using the equivalent circuit. The results are presented below. Several frequencies are marked in Figures 5-4 and 5-5. The first of these is f_s. This is the frequency at which the crystal is series resonant, and is given by

$$f_s = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{L_1 C_1}} \tag{5-1}$$

where

f_s = series resonant frequency in hertz,
L_1 = motional arm inductance in henrys, and
C_1 = motional arm capacitance in farads.

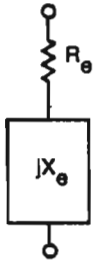


Figure 5-2. Impedance representation of a quartz crystal.

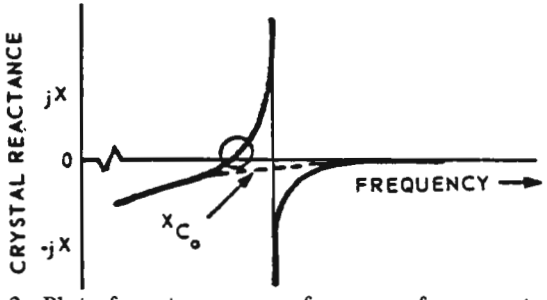


Figure 5-3. Plot of reactance versus frequency for a quartz crystal.

The second point, f_r, represents the frequency at which the crystal appears purely resistive ($X_e = 0$). Point f_r is different from f_s only because of the presence of C_0, and for practical purposes can be considered equal to f_s. The third point labeled, f_L, is the frequency at which the crystal is antiresonant with a given external capacitor C_L. If Δf is the frequency shift ($f_L - f_s$) between series resonance and this load point, then

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f_s} = \frac{C_1}{2(C_0 + C_L)} \tag{5-2}$$

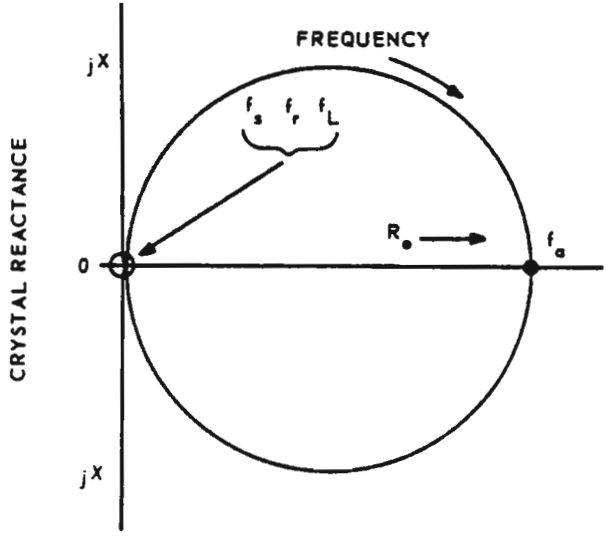


Figure 5-4. Plot of reactance versus resistance for a quartz crystal.

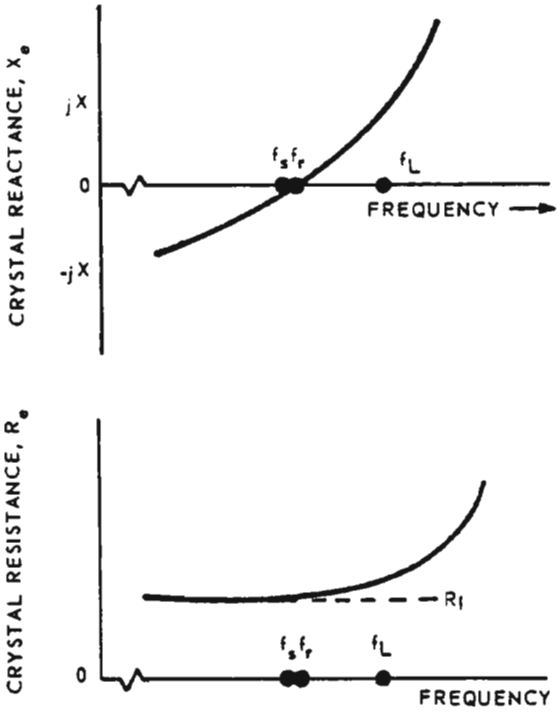


Figure 5-5. Expanded portions of crystal reactance (A) and resistance, (B). (See Figures 5-3 and 5-4).

where

Δf = frequency shift

$(f_L - f_s)$ in hertz,

C_1 = motional arm capacitance in picofarads,
C_0 = crystal holder capacitance in picofarads, and
C_L = external load capacitance in picofarads.

The point labeled f_a is the antiresonant frequency of the crystal with its own holder capacitance C_0. It is given by

$$f_a = f_s \left[1 + \frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right] \tag{5-3}$$

where

f_a = antiresonant frequency in hertz,
f_s = series resonant frequency in hertz,
C_1 = motional arm capacitance in picofarads, and
C_0 = crystal holder capacitance in picofarads.

Furthermore, it can be shown (see Appendix K) that the equivalent resistance R_e in the region between series (f_s) and antiresonance (f_a) is given by

$$R_e = R_1 \left(\frac{C_L + C_0}{C_L}\right)^2 \tag{5-4}$$

provided the assumption $\left| X_{C_0}\left(\frac{C_L}{C_0 + C_L}\right) \right| >> R_1$ is true, where

$$X_{C_0} = -\frac{1}{2\pi f C_0}.$$

Normally a crystal is operated between its series resonant frequency and its antiresonant frequency so that the reactance X_e is either zero or inductive.

To help the engineer acquire a practical grasp of the equivalent circuit, Table 5-1 is included to give a rough idea of the magnitude of the various equivalent circuit components.

The parameters of a quartz crystal resonator may be varied greatly by the angle at which the crystal blank is cut from the raw quartz and by the mode of vibration. This is primarily a concern of the crystal manufacturer and will not be discussed in detail here. (An excellent

Table 5-1. Typical Crystal Parameter Values.

Parameters	200-kHz[31] fundamental	2-MHz[31] fundamental	30-MHz[31] third overtone	90-MHz fifth overtone
R_1	2 kΩ	100 Ω	20 Ω	40 Ω
L_1	27 H	520 mH	11 mH	6 mH
C_1	0.024 pF	0.012 pF	0.0026 pF	0.0005 pF
C_0	9 pF	4 pF	6 pF	4 pF
Q	18×10^3	54×10^3	10^5	85×10^3

treatment of crystal cuts is given in reference 6.) Several properties of crystal resonators are of concern to the designer of crystal oscillators and will be discussed in the following paragraphs.

5.1 LOAD CAPACITANCE

From Figures 5-3, 5-4, and 5-5 it can be seen that the frequency of the crystal will vary to some extent depending upon the reactance that the crystal must present to an external circuit. Since the frequency difference between series and antiresonance ($f_a - f_s$) may be on the order of 1 percent for some crystals, it is important that the crystal be ground to frequency at the load reactance value with which it will be used in the oscillator. Four load conditions have become standard and are nearly always used. With the first two of these, the crystal acts like an inductive reactance which will resonate with either 30 or 32 pF at the operating frequency. Hence, the load capacitance $C_L = 30$ pF or $C_L = 32$ pF. Crystals of this type must be used in parallel resonant oscillators. A second common load point is series resonance, where the crystal acts like the resistor R_1. Crystals of this type must be used with series resonant oscillators. A fourth load point, $C_L = 20$ pF, is sometimes used for crystals below 500 kHz.

5.2 PIN-TO-PIN CAPACITANCE

Pin-to-pin capacitance (C_0 of Figure 5-1) refers to the capacity of the electrodes on the quartz as well as that of the holder itself. The holder capacitance is usually around 0.5 pF and the remaining capacitance is due to the electrodes plated on the quartz. C_0 should be restricted to about 5 pF for AT-cut* crystals while it may be somewhat higher for low-frequency cuts. It becomes important to minimize C_0 for VHF crystals, where it may cause the oscillator to free-run (to oscillate not crystal-controlled). C_0 may be reduced in crystal manufacture by reducing the electrode spot size on the crystal blank. However, this tends to increase the resistance R_1.

*The AT-cut is the basic high-frequency crystal normally used in the range from 1 to 150 MHz.

5.3 RESISTANCE

The resistance of a crystal is specified at the rated load capacitance, although this usually does not differ grossly from the series resistance R_1. The maximum allowable resistance for a given crystal type may vary from about 40 Ω for VHF crystals to approximately 500 kΩ for audio-frequency crystals. It is important to make certain that an oscillator will function properly with a crystal of the maximum specified resistance.

5.4 RATED OR TEST DRIVE LEVEL

Drive level refers to the power dissipated in the crystal. Rated or test drive level is the power at which all requirements of the crystal specification must be met. The drive level specification should reasonably duplicate the actual drive level at which the crystal will be used because frequency is somewhat dependent on drive level. AT-cut crystals generally can withstand a considerable overdrive without physical damage; however, the electrical parameters are degraded at excessive drive. Low-frequency crystals (especially flectural mode crystals) may fracture if overdriven. Drive level ratings vary from 5 μW below 100 kHz to about 10 mW in the 1- to 20-MHz region for fundamental mode crystals. Overtone crystals which are generally used above 20 or 30 MHz are often rated at 1–2 mW of drive.

5.5 FREQUENCY STABILITY

The frequency stability of a crystal generally is limited by its temperature coefficient and aging rate. AT-cut crystals have a better temperature coefficient than most other cuts. Common frequency tolerance specifications are ±0.005 percent or ±0.0025 percent from −55°C to +105°C. These include calibration tolerance; thus, the actual temperature coefficient is slightly better. Improved temperature coefficients can be obtained if the temperature range is limited. This can be seen in Figure 5-6, which gives frequency–temperature curves for AT-cut crystals. These curves may be represented by cubic equations and are strongly dependent on the angle of cut of the quartz blank from the mother crystal. The points of zero temperature coefficient

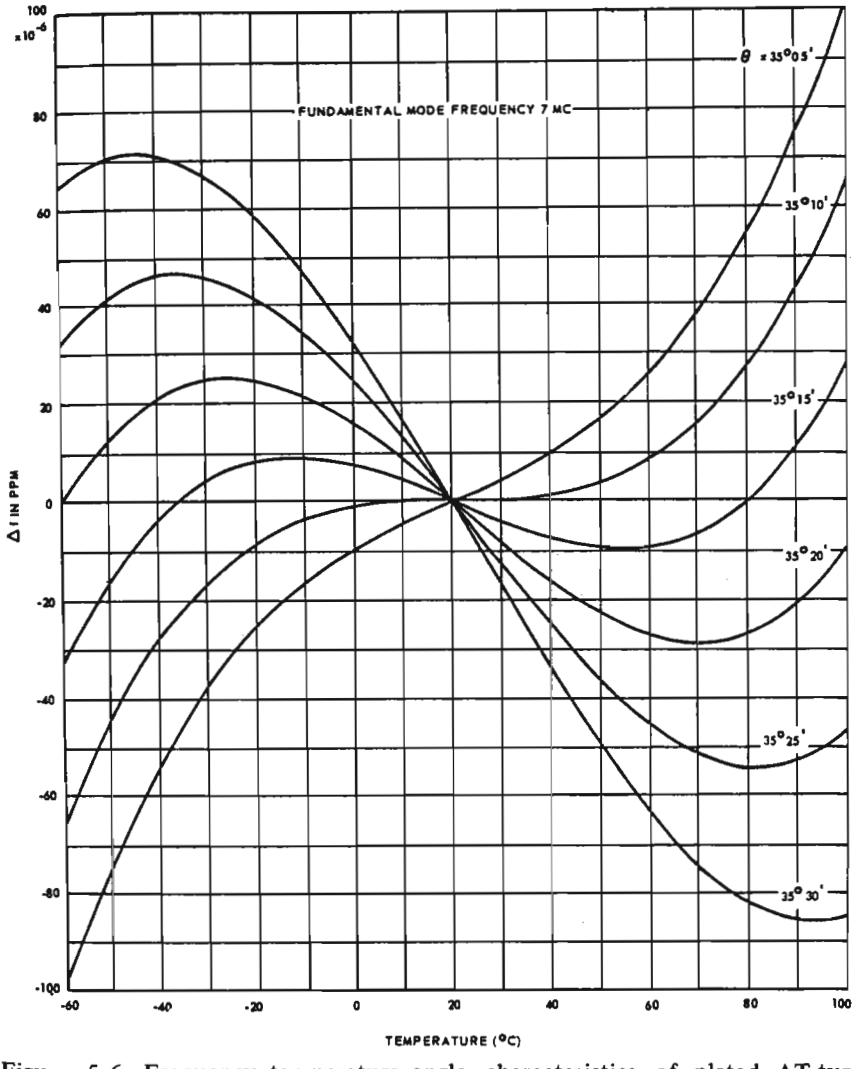


Figure 5-6. Frequency–temperature–angle characteristics of plated AT-type natural quartz crystal resonators.[4]

are called the turning points (lower and upper turning-point temperatures). One turning point can be placed where desired by selecting the angle of cut; the other turning point then is determined, since the turning points are symmetrical about a point in the 20–30°C range.

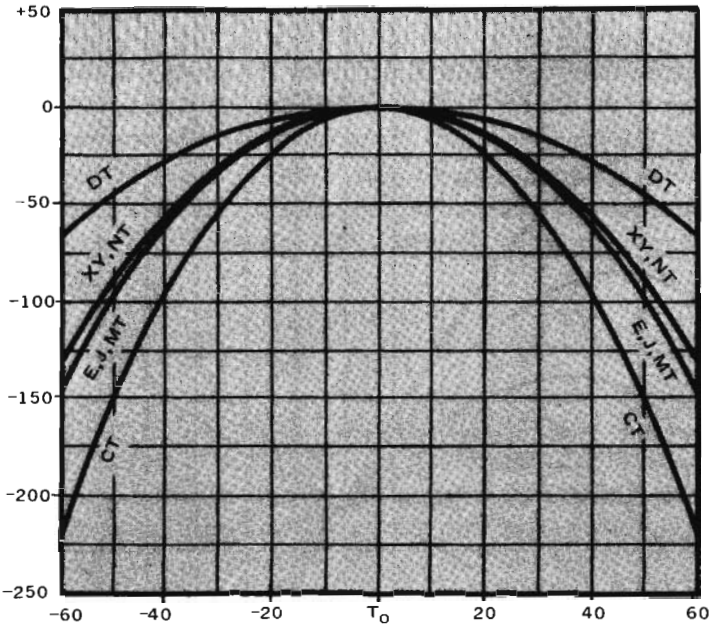


Figure 5-7. Frequency–temperature characteristics of low-frequency crystal cuts. (Courtesy Northern Engineering Laboratories)

The slope between the turning points becomes smaller as the turning points move together. Crystals designed for use in an oven should be cut so that a turning point occurs at the oven temperature. Figure 5-7 shows the frequency–temperature curves for several low-frequency cuts. The J-cut is used below 10 kHz, while an XY-cut may be used from about 3 kHz to 85 kHz. An NT-cut may be used in the 10 kHz to 100 kHz range. A DT-cut is applicable from 100 kHz to about 800 kHz and a CT from perhaps 300 kHz to 900 kHz.

5.6. FINISHING OR CALIBRATION TOLERANCE

Finishing tolerance is the maximum allowable error in frequency of a crystal at some specified temperature. If ±0.005-percent crystals are used, it is often desirable to specify a room temperature finishing tolerance of, e.g., ±0.0015 percent so that oscillators can be tuned conveniently to frequency in production. If oscillators are to be tuned

to frequency, the finishing tolerance must be less than the tuning range of the oscillator. In the case of temperature controlled crystals, the finishing tolerance is specified at the nominal operating temperature of the oven. Another use of finishing tolerance is with an alternative method of specifying the overall frequency tolerance of a crystal. It is sometimes desirable to specify a room temperature finishing tolerance and a maximum deviation from the room temperature frequency over the temperature range. This method may be used in place of specifying a frequency tolerance as described in section 5.5.

5.7. CRYSTAL AGING

Crystal aging is caused primarily by a gradual transfer of mass to or from the crystal blank and by a relaxation of stresses. Generally it is slowed down by operating the crystal at low drive level and at low temperature; however, it is most important that the crystal be kept clean. For this reason, it is essential that the hermetic seal of the crystal be preserved. Aging of cold-weld and glass enclosed crystals is significantly slower than that of crystals in solder sealed cans, since they can be kept cleaner. Glass enclosed crystals usually age up in frequency due to an apparent reduction in the mass of the quartz blank, while metal enclosed crystals age down in frequency because impurities settle on the blank.

Aging rate specifications are generally ±0.0005 percent per month for standard military-type (MIL-type) crystals; however, it is possible to achieve aging rates as low as 1 part in 10^{11} per day for precision crystals. Ordinary crystals enclosed in cold-weld holders can be expected to age 1–5 parts in 10^8 per week after the first year. Aging is not accounted for in the overall temperature specification as discussed previously.

5.8. Q AND STIFFNESS OF CRYSTALS

The Q of ordinary or MIL-type crystals is normally not specified, but for standard units, it usually falls between 20,000 and 200,000. Precision crystals may have Q values as high as 5×10^6. Q is defined as X_L/R_1, where X_L is the reactance of L_1 at the operating frequency.

The C_0/C_1 ratio of a crystal usually is not specified. It is a measure

of the stiffness of the crystal, as can be seen from equation (5-3). When the pulling characteristics of a crystal are important, it should be specified. Typical C_0/C_1 ratios may be on the order of 1000, although it is possible to achieve C_0/C_1 ratios from 125 to over 35,000.

5.9. MECHANICAL OVERTONE CRYSTALS

The AT-cut crystals may be operated on their fundamental frequency or on odd mechanical overtones, notably the third and the fifth overtones. Overtone crystals normally are used above 20 MHz. They have higher Q values, better aging rates, and are electrically stiffer than fundamental crystals of the same frequency. A tuned circuit is necessary in the oscillator to ensure operation on the proper overtone. Overtone crystals are nearly always operated at series resonance. The overtone responses of a crystal should not be confused with harmonics of the fundamental frequency. They are two different phenomena. The overtone responses of a crystal are in general not exactly multiples of the fundamental frequency, although they are close. These overtone responses are depicted in Figure 5-8 which shows, in general, the various responses which may be expected in a typical AT-cut crystal. The spurious responses are discussed in section 5.10.

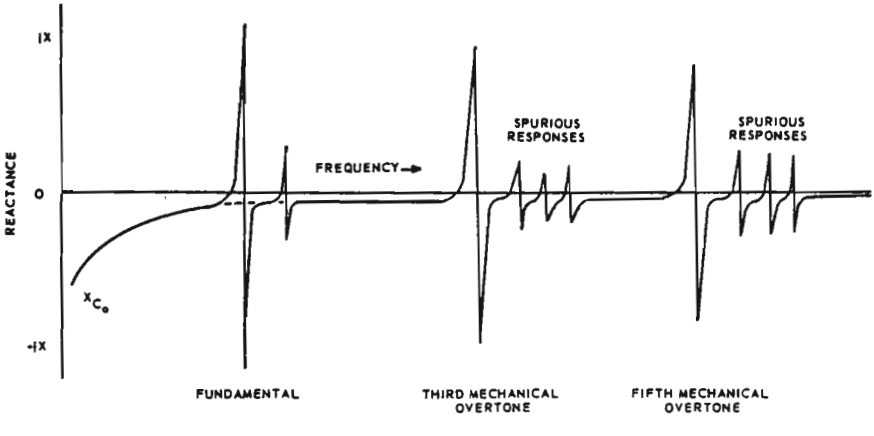


Figure 5-8. Overtone response of a quartz crystal.

As a general rule, third-overtone crystals are used from 20 to 60 MHz and fifth overtones from 60 to 125 MHz.*

5.10. SPURIOUS OR UNWANTED MODES

There are always a number of spurious responses in a quartz crystal in addition to the response of interest. This results from the fact that various modes of vibration are possible in any given quartz blank. Although the number, magnitude, and frequencies of the unwanted modes vary from crystal to crystal, an arbitrary arrangement is shown in Figure 5-8. Most of the spurious responses have a high resistance compared to the main response; however, a few low-resistance responses usually exist. They are almost always higher in frequency than the main response, and for AT-cut crystals very often fall within 200 kHz of the main response. If a spurious response has a resistance which is too low with respect to the main response, the oscillator circuit may operate on the frequency of the spurious rather than on the main response.

Generally, no problem with spurious responses is encountered using fundamental-mode crystals. With overtone crystals, however, problems frequently are encountered. It is desirable to specify a large spurious-to-main-response resistance ratio to avoid the possibility of trouble. Practically, however, it is difficult to eliminate the unwanted responses, although several techniques are available to reduce them. With third overtone crystals, a 2-to-1 spurious ratio specification is fairly common, although often inadequate, while a 4-to-1 ratio is practical even in large production quantities. With fifth-overtone crystals, it is somewhat more difficult to make the spurious resistance high, but a 3-to-1 minimum ratio is still practical. It is often desirable to specify not only a minimum ratio but also a minimum permissible spurious resistance. This results from the fact that a larger spurious ratio is required when the crystal resistance is low. For a discussion of the spurious effects in oscillator circuits, the reader is referred to section 9.5.

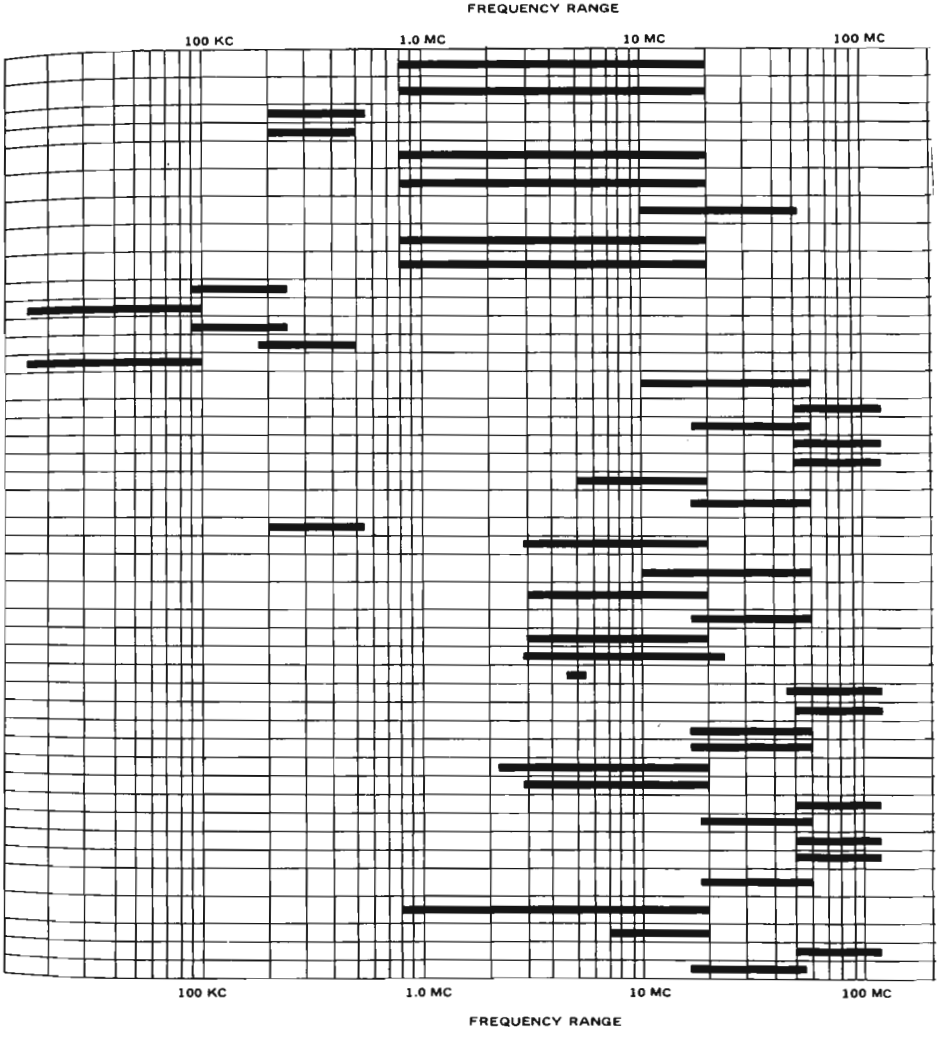
*A considerable amount of research is being conducted in the area of surface acoustic wave resonators. These devices, which may be represented by the same equivalent circuit as the bulk wave resonators discussed in this section, show promise of extending the frequency range of crystal oscillators into the low gigahertz region. The C_0/C_1 ratio of these devices is roughly equivalent to a fifth overtone AT-cut; however, the TC is parabolic in shape.

Table 5-2. Summary of Selected MIL Crystals (compiled from MIL-STD-683D).

MIL CRYSTAL TYPE	HOLDER* TYPE	OVER-ALL FREQUENCY TOLERANCE (%)	OPERATING TEMP RANGE (°C)	LOAD COND	MODE	RATED DRIVE LEVEL (MW)
CR-18A/U	HC-6/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	32 PF	FUND	10 (≤10 MC) 5 (>10 MC)
CR-19A/U	HC-6/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FUND	10 (≤10 MC) 5 (>10 MC)
CR-25B/U	HC-6/U	±.01	−40 TO +85	SERIES	FUND	2.0
CR-26A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	SERIES	FUND	2.0
CR-27A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	32 PF	FUND	5 (≤10 MC) 2.5 (>10 MC)
CR-28A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	SERIES	FUND	5 (≤10 MC) 2.5 (>10 MC)
CR-32A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	SERIES	THIRD	2 (≤25 MC) 1 (>25 MC)
CR-35A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+80 TO +90	SERIES	FUND	5 (≤10 MC) 2.5 (>10 MC)
CR-36A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+80 TO +90	32 PF	FUND	5 (≤10 MC) 2.5 (>10 MC)
CR-37A/U	HC-13/U	±.02	−40 TO +70	20 PF	FUND	2.0
CR-38A/U	HC-13/U	±.012	−40 TO +70	20 PF	FUND	0.1
CR-42A/U	HC-13/U	±.003	+70 TO +80	32 PF	FUND	2.0
CR-47A/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	20 PF	FUND	2.0
CR-50A/U	HC-13/U	±.012	−40 TO +70	SERIES	FUND	0.1
CR-52A/U	HC-6/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	4.0 (≤25 MC) 2.0 (>25 MC)
CR-54A/U	HC-6/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2.0
CR-55/U	HC-18/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2.0
CR-56A/U	HC-18/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2.0
CR-59A/U	HC-18/U	±.002	+80 TO +90	SERIES	FIFTH	1.0
CR-60A/U	HC-18/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FUND	5.0
CR-61/U	HC-18/U	±.002	+80 TO +90	SERIES	THIRD	2.0 (≤25 MC) 1.0 (>25 MC)
CR-63B/U	HC-6/U	±.01	−40 TO +70	20 PF	FUND	2.0
CR-64/U	HC-18/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	30 PF	FUND	5.0
CR-65/U	HC-6/U	±.001	+70 TO +80	SERIES	THIRD	2.0 (≤25 MC) 1.0 (>25 MC)
CR-66/U	HC-6/U	±.002	−55 TO +105	30 PF	FUND	10.0 (≤10 MC) 5.0 (>10 MC)
CR-67/U	HC-18/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2.0
CR-68/U	HC-6/U	±.002	+70 TO +80	32 PF	FUND	5.0
CR-69A/U	HC-18/U	±.002	−55 TO +105	30 PF	FUND	5.0
CR-71/U	HC-30/U	±.00008		32 PF	FIFTH	70 UA
CR-74/U	HC-26/U	±.001	+80 TO +90	SERIES	FIFTH	1.0
CR-75/U	HC-6/U	±.001	+70 TO +80	SERIES	FIFTH	1.0
CR-76/U	HC-18/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2.0
CR-77/U	HC-25/U	±.002	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2.0
CR-78/U	HC-25/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	30 PF	FUND	5.0
CR-79/U	HC-25/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FUND	5.0
CR-80/U	HC-18/U	±.003	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2.0
CR-81/U	HC-25/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2.0
CR-82/U	HC-25/U	±.005	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2.0
CR-83/U	HC-25/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2.0
CR-84/U	HC-25/U	±.002	+80 TO +90	SERIES	THIRD	2.0 (≤25 MC) 1.0 (>25 MC)
CR-85/U	HC-6/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FUND	10 (≤10 MC) 5 (>10 MC)
CR-101/U	HC-35/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	30 PF	FUND	5
CR-102/U	HC-35/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	FIFTH	2
CR-103/U	HC-35/U	±.0025	−55 TO +105	SERIES	THIRD	2

*FURTHER DETAILS OF THE HOLDERS ARE SHOWN IN FIGURE 5-10.

Table 5-2. (*Continued*)



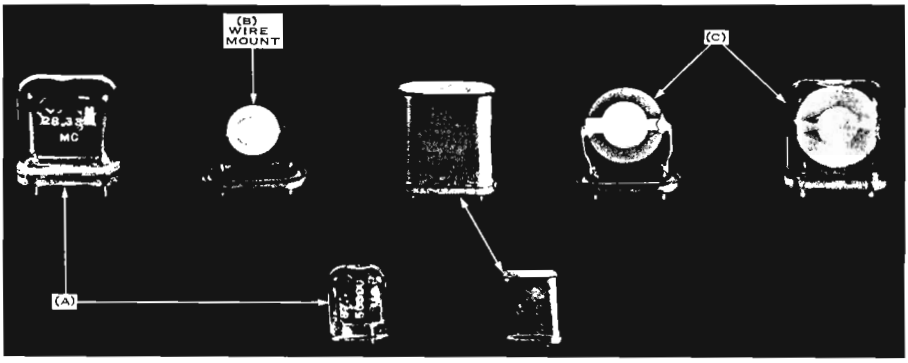


Figure 5-9. Ruggedized crystal mounts.

5.11. VIBRATION, SHOCK, AND ACCELERATION

Crystal units are available which will meet most environmental specifications. In general, vibration and shock do not cause catastrophic failures but, rather, frequency shifts and resistance changes. Frequency shifts on the order of 0.0001 percent are common, and resistance changes of 10 percent may occur. Figure 5-9 shows several ruggedized crystal mounts. The wire-mounted crystal is generally not satisfactory for severe environmental conditions, and one of the ruggedized versions must be used. (A) and (C) in Figure 5-9 generally are satisfactory for vibration up to 2000 Hz. Large crystal blanks are difficult to ruggedize and, consequently, low-frequency crystals should be avoided if severe environmental conditions will be encountered. For more specific information on environmental conditions, the reader may consult vibration specifications in MIL-C-3098.*

5.12. STANDARD MILITARY CRYSTALS

It is possible to specify a crystal to fit the needs of a particular oscillator circuit. Where possible, however, it is more desirable to use standard crystals. Table 5-2 presents a summary of selected MIL crystals, while Table 5-3 gives the maximum resistance for these units.

*AT-cut resonators generally show an acceleration sensitivity of about 1 ppb/*g*. Research is presently being conducted, however, to develop a stress-compensated crystal cut (SC) which shows promise of reducing the sensitivity by more than an order of magnitude. This also results in a reduction of the frequency overshoot during warm up due to thermal stress in the crystal blank.

TABLE 5-3. Maximum Crystal Resistance. (Compiled from MIL-C-3098F, 24 July 1973)

CR-18A/U

MHz	(Ω)
0.8 to 0.85	625
0.85+ to 0.9	600
0.9+ to 1	575
1+ to 1.12	540
1.12+ to 1.25	490
1.25+ to 1.37	450
1.37+ to 1.5	410
1.5+ to 1.62	375
1.62+ to 1.75	330
1.75+ to 1.87	300
1.87+ to 2	290
2+ to 2.12	270
2.12+ to 2.25	245
2.25+ to 2.6	195
2.6+ to 3	150
3+ to 3.4	110
3.4+ to 3.75	90
3.75+ to 4	75
4+ to 5	60
5+ to 7	35
7+ to 10	24
10+ to 15	22
15+ to 20	20

CR-19A/U

MHz	(Ω)
0.8 to 0.85	520
0.85+ to 0.9	480
0.9+ to 1	440
1+ to 1.12	400
1.12+ to 1.25	380
1.25+ to 1.37	340
1.37+ to 1.5	300
1.5+ to 1.62	275
1.62+ to 1.75	250
1.75+ to 1.87	220
1.87+ to 2	185
2+ to 2.12	165
2.12+ to 2.25	150
2.25+ to 2.6	125

CR-19A/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.6+ to 3	90
3+ to 3.4	70
3.4+ to 3.75	52
3.75+ to 4	45
4+ to 5	37
5+ to 7	25
7+ to 10	20
10+ to 15	18
15+ to 20	15

CR-25A/U

kHz	(Ω)
200 to 225	2,500
225+ to 265	3,000
265+ to 290	3,500
290+ to 330	4,000
330+ to 370	4,500
370+ to 410	5,000
410+ to 425	5,500
425+ to 460	6,500
460+ to 500	7,500

CR-26A/U

Same as CR-25A/U

CR-27A/U

MHz	(Ω)
0.8 to 0.85	620
0.85+ to 0.9	600
0.9+ to 1	570
1+ to 1.12	540
1.12+ to 1.25	490
1.25+ to 1.37	450
1.37+ to 1.5	410
1.5+ to 1.62	370
1.62+ to 1.75	330
1.75+ to 1.87	300
1.87+ to 2	290
2+ to 2.12	270
2.12+ to 2.25	240
2.25+ to 2.6	190

TABLE 5-3. (Continued)

CR-27A/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.6+ to 3	150
3+ to 3.4	110
3.4+ to 3.75	90
3.75 to 4	75
4+ to 5	60
5+ to 7	35
7+ to 10	24
10+ to 15	22
15+ to 20	20

CR-28A/U
Same as CR-19A/U

CR-35A/U
Same as CR-19A/U

CR-36A/U
Same as CR-27A/U

CR-37A/U

kHz	(Ω)
90 to 170	5,000
170+ to 250	5,500

CR-38A/U

MHz	(Ω)
16 to 50	110,000
50+ to 80	100,000
80+ to 100	90,000

CR-42A/U

kHz	(Ω)
90 to 170	4,500
170+ to 250	5,000

CR-47A/U

kHz	(Ω)
190 to 225	3,700
225+ to 275	4,200
275+ to 325	4,600
325+ to 375	4,900
375+ to 425	5,300
425+ to 475	5,600
475+ to 500	6,000

CR-50A/U

kHz	(Ω)
16 to 30	100,000
30+ to 50	90,000
50+ to 70	80,000
70+ to 90	70,000
90+ to 100	60,000

CR-52A/U 40 Ω

CR-54A/U

MHz	(Ω)
50 to 90	50
90+ to 125	60

CR-55/U 40 Ω

CR-56A/U 60 Ω

CR-59A/U

MHz	(Ω)
50 to 500	50
100+ to 125	60

CR-60A/U

MHz	(Ω)
5 to 7	50
7+ to 10	30
10+ to 15	25
15+ to 20	20

CR-61/U 40 Ω

CR-63B/U

MHz	(Ω)
200 to 225	5,300
225+ to 275	6,000
275+ to 325	6,500
325+ to 375	7,000
375+ to 425	7,500
425+ to 475	8,000
475+ to 500	8,500
500+ to 555	5,000

TABLE 5-3. (Continued)

CR-64/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.9 to 3.75	180
3.75+ to 4.75	120
4.75+ to 6	75
6+ to 7	50
7+ to 10	30
10+ to 20	25

CR-65/U 40 Ω

CR-66/U

MHz	(Ω)
3 to 4	60
4+ to 5	50
5+ to 7	45
7+ to 10	35
10+ to 20	25

CR-67/U 40 Ω

CR-68/U

MHz	(Ω)
3 to 4	40
4+ to 5	35
5+ to 6	30
6+ to 7	28
7+ to 8	25
8+ to 9	23
9+ to 10	20
10+ to 15	18
15+ to 20	15

CR-69/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.9 to 3.75	180
3.75+ to 4.75	120
4.75+ to 6	75
6+ to 7	50
7+ to 10	30
10+ to 25	25

CR-71/U 175 Ω

CR-74/U 50 Ω

CR-75/U 40 Ω

CR-76/U 40 Ω

CR-77/U 40 Ω

CR-78/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.2 to 3.00	360
3.0+ to 3.75	180
3.75+ to 4.75	120
4.75+ to 6	75
6+ to 7	50
7+ to 10	30
10+ to 20	25

CR-79/U

MHz	(Ω)
2.9 to 7.0	50
7+ to 10	30
10+ to 15	25
15+ to 20	20

CR-80/U
Same as CR-54A/U

CR-81/U 40 Ω

CR-82/U
Same as CR-54A/U

CR-83/U
Same as CR-54A/U

CR-84/U 40 Ω

CR-85/U
Same as CR-19A/U

CR-101/U

7 to 10	30
10+ to 20	25

CR-102/U 60 Ω

CR-103/U 40 Ω

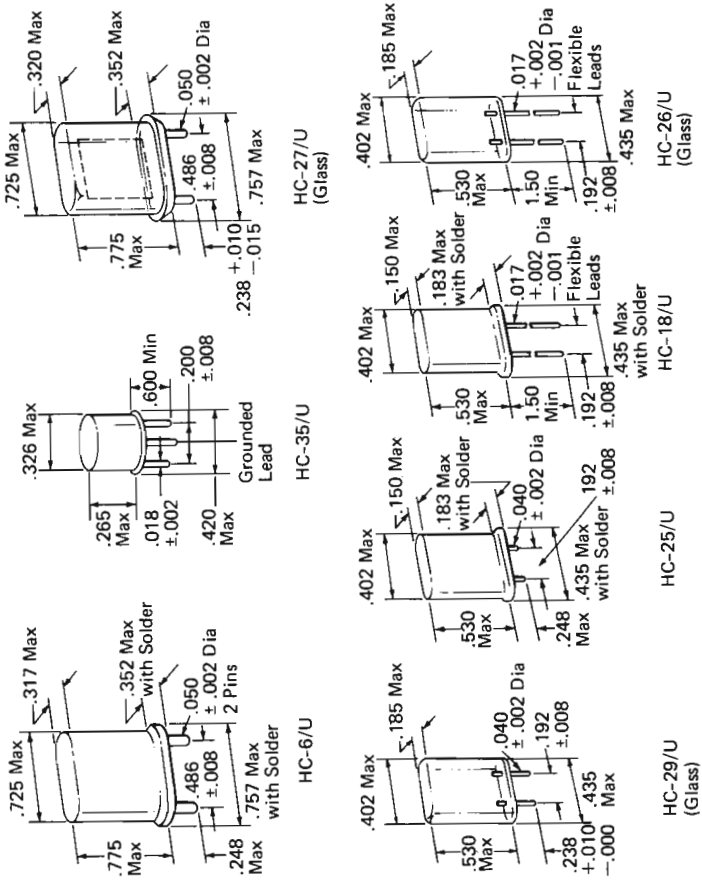


Figure 5-10. Crystal holder dimensions.

The dimensions of the more commonly used crystal holders are given in Figure 5-10. For additional information the reader may consult the latest version of MIL-C-3098. In some applications only a few parameters will be different from a standard crystal, and here the military specifications are a good basic guideline to use in writing the specification. An example of a crystal specification which refers to several MIL standards is given in Appendix L.

5.13. SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

A large number of specifications and standards are available which present very useful information on crystals and methods of measurement. Among these are IEEE Standards, EIA Standards, IEC Standards, and MIL Standards. A good listing of these is presented in reference 50, p. 494 along with information on where they may be obtained.

6
Discussion of Transistors

The selection of a transistor type for a crystal oscillator is largely based on engineering judgment. The following factors that should be considered are discussed in this chapter:

a. Temperature requirements.
b. Maximum frequency requirements.
c. Output power requirements.
d. Input and output impedance.
e. Available power gain.
f. Interchangeability requirements.
g. Cost, availability, etc.

In addition to these, several other characteristics affect the oscillator performance to a lesser degree. A number of these are also discussed.

The transistor chosen must obviously be operable over the required temperature range. In addition, the variation in transistor characteristics with temperature must be compatible with the oscillator circuit. Roughly, the β of a transistor decreases by about 50 percent from room temperature to $-55°C$ and increases by about 50 percent from room temperature to the maximum permissible operating temperature. However, some transistors are better than others in this respect. The saturation resistance increases with temperature. At VHF frequencies, the characteristics of transistors are less dependent on temperature, since the low-frequency parameters have little influence on VHF performance.

Generally, bipolar transistors are used for crystal oscillators because of their larger transconductance at low power levels. The use of field effect devices as crystal oscillators is increasing, however,

in connection with oscillators implemented with logic gates and other integrated circuits.

The cutoff frequency f_t of a transistor is some measure of the phase shift through it at the operating frequency. This phase shift is lagging and causes the oscillator frequency to decrease and to become more dependent on the transistor. Therefore, it is desirable to use a transistor with a cutoff frequency at least an order of magnitude higher than the operating frequency.

Larger output powers obviously require higher transistor dissipation. It must be remembered, however, that the allowable quartz crystal dissipation often limits the maximum power output of a stable oscillator.

For high-stability oscillators, it is desirable to minimize the effects of the transistor on the frequency. For this reason the input and output capacitances of the transistor are often swamped out by the addition of external input and output capacitors. (This is particularly convenient in the Pierce, Colpitts, and Clapp oscillator circuits.) If the input and output capacitances of the transistor are small, they can be swamped out effectively without the external capacitors becoming large enough to prevent oscillation. Therefore, it is desirable to use transistors with low input and output capacitances.

6.1. TRANSISTOR EQUIVALENT CIRCUITS

A large number of equivalent circuit representations have been used for transistors in various applications. Obviously, different representations work better or are more practical in certain applications than in others. It has been found that for crystal oscillator design, the *Y*-parameter representation and the hybrid π equivalent circuit are very useful. Consequently, these circuits will be reviewed briefly prior to incorporating them in the derivation of oscillator equations. The *Y*-parameter representation is quite versatile in that any linear device can be characterized using the approach, whether it be a single transistor or a combination of devices such as a gate or an integrated amplifier. It is often more convenient to perform measurements on a device, particularly at VHF frequencies, using *S*-parameters; therefore, the equations required to convert from S-parameters to Y-parameters are also included.

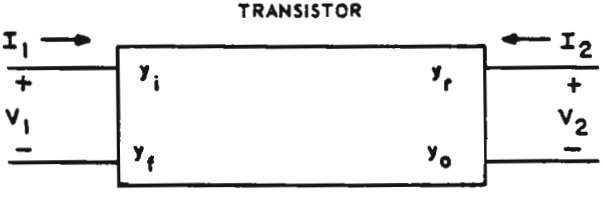
It is possible to perform a complete oscillator analysis based on S-parameters. Such an analysis would be most useful in the design of microwave oscillators. Since quartz crystals are generally not used beyond 150 MHz, the Y-parameter approach is more appropriate for the present work.

The hybrid π equivalent circuit of a transistor is, of course, much more closely related to the physical properties of the device. It is useful in the design of crystal oscillators because it can easily be adapted and used in a nonlinear model and thus is used in connection with analyses to predict the amplitude of oscillation. The Y-parameters can also be derived from the hybrid π equivalent circuit, and these are given in section 6.3.

6.2. Y-PARAMETER MODEL

The Y-parameter representation of a transistor or device is based on the assumption that the device is linear. This is a valid assumption during the initial buildup of oscillation and can therefore be used to predict the starting conditions for oscillation. The starting conditions are obviously an important part of the design and are studied in great detail. After the signal becomes large, the Y-parameters can still be useful if we define them as the ratios of the fundamental components of current to the fundamental components of voltage.

The Y-parameter representation of a device is shown in Figure 6-1 along with an equivalent circuit which can be used in Figure 6-2.



$$I_1 = y_i V_1 + y_r V_2$$

$$I_2 = y_f V_1 + y_o V_2$$

Figure 6-1. Y-Parameter representation of a transistor.

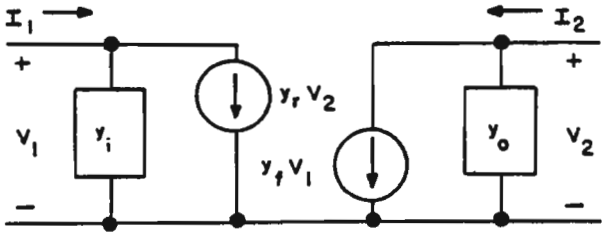


Figure 6-2. Transistor equivalent circuit using Y-parameters.

The term y_i is the input admittance with the output short-circuited:

$$y_i = \left.\frac{I_1}{V_1}\right|_{V_2=0}.$$

In like manner, y_o is the short-circuit output admittance:

$$y_o = \left.\frac{I_2}{V_2}\right|_{V_1=0};$$

y_f is the forward transfer admittance (also referred to as the transconductance):

$$y_f = \left.\frac{I_1}{V_2}\right|_{V_1=0}.$$

and y_r is the reverse transfer admittance:

$$y_r = \left.\frac{I_1}{V_2}\right|_{V_1=0}.$$

A subscript e, b, or c is added to the Y-parameters to indicate the circuit configuration; thus, y_{ib} is the common-base input admittance while y_{ie} is the common-emitter input admittance. If the common-emitter parameters are given on the transistor data sheet, the common-base parameters can be calculated using the following relationships:

$$y_{ib} = y_{ie} + y_{oe} + y_{fe} + y_{re} \tag{6-1}$$

$$y_{fb} = -(y_{fe} + y_{oe}) \tag{6-2}$$

$$y_{rb} = -(y_{re} + y_{oe}) \tag{6-3}$$

$$y_{ob} = y_{oe} \tag{6-4}$$

Also Y-parameters can be calculated from S-parameters as follows. If we assume a common-emitter configuration so that $y_{ie} = y_{11}$, $y_{fe} = y_{21}$, $y_{re} = y_{12}$, and $y_{oe} = y_{22}$,

$$y_{11} = \frac{(1 - S_{11})(1 + S_{22}) + S_{12}S_{21}}{Z_o[(1 + S_{22})(1 + S_{11}) - S_{12}S_{21}]} \tag{6-5}$$

$$y_{21} = \frac{-2S_{21}/Z_o}{(1 + S_{11})(1 + S_{22}) - S_{12}S_{21}} \tag{6-6}$$

$$y_{12} = \frac{-2S_{12}/Z_o}{(1 + S_{11})(1 + S_{22}) - S_{21}S_{12}} \tag{6-7}$$

$$y_{22} = \frac{(1 + S_{11})(1 - S_{22}) + S_{21}S_{12}}{Z_o[(1 + S_{11})(1 + S_{22}) - S_{12}S_{21}]} \tag{6-8}$$

For purposes of oscillator analysis, it is often convenient to break the Y-parameters into their real and imaginary parts (as listed on transistor data sheets). Therefore, the following standard designations will be used

$$y_i = g_i + jb_i$$

$$y_o = g_o + jb_o$$

$$y_f = g_f + jb_f$$

$$y_r = g_r + jb_r$$

Physically,

$$g_i = \frac{1}{R_{\text{in}}}, \quad b_i = \omega C_{\text{in}}, \quad g_o = \frac{1}{R_{\text{out}}}, \quad \text{and} \quad b_o = \omega C_{\text{out}}. \tag{6-9}$$

6.3. HYBRID π EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT

The hybrid π equivalent circuit of a transistor is shown in Figure 6-3. Unfortunately, at all but low frequency, where capacitances can be neglected, the application of this circuit to oscillators leads

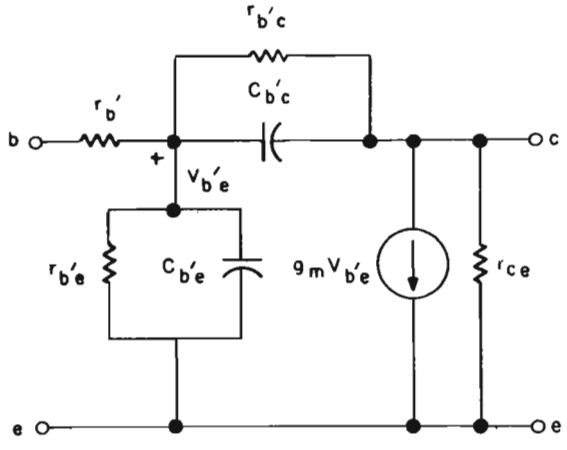


Figure 6-3. Hybrid π (common-emitter) equivalent circuit.

to complicated equations that are difficult to solve. Pritchard[39] has made certain simplifications to the equivalent circuit of Figure 6-3. Figure 6-4 shows this approximate high-frequency equivalent circuit for the common-emitter configuration.

The resulting Y-parameters are

$$y_{ie} = \frac{1}{r_{b'} - j(\omega_t/\omega) r_{e'}} \tag{6-10}$$

$$y_{re} = \frac{-\omega_t r_{c'} C_c}{r_{b'} - j(\omega_t/\omega) r_{e'}} \tag{6-11}$$

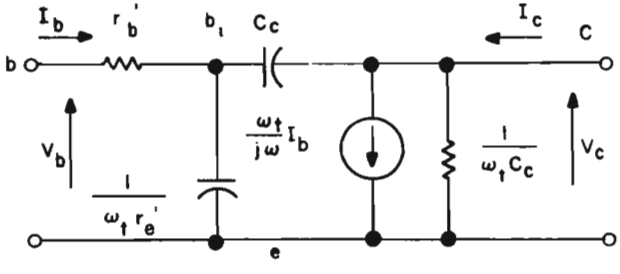


Figure 6-4. Approximate high-frequency equivalent circuit of a junction transistor.

$$y_{fe} = \frac{-j(\omega_t/\omega)}{r_{b'} - j(\omega_t/\omega)r_{e'}} \tag{6-12}$$

$$y_{oe} = \frac{\omega_t C_c(r_{b'} + r_{e'}) + j\omega C_c(r_{b'})}{r_{b'} - j(\omega_t/\omega)r_{e'}} \tag{6-13}$$

These equations establish the approximate correlation between internal parameters and terminal parameters. Since most of these expressions are rather involved, it is simpler to express circuit design equations in terms of the terminal parameters.[26]

6.4. NONLINEAR MODELS

In contrast to the case of small-signal properties of the transistor, very few results predicting the large-signal behavior are available in the literature. As a result, the engineer is generally unfamiliar with this aspect of transistor behavior.

As previously stated, the small-signal behavior holds only for base-to-emitter signal voltages up to about 10 mV. It is possible, however, to define equivalent linear properties at higher signal levels. This is done by forming the ratios of the fundamental components of voltage to the fundamental components of current. The ratios, of course, change with amplitude. It is the purpose of this section to present formulas which will enable the engineer to predict the large-signal properties of a transistor knowing the small-signal values and the signal amplitude. The predictions are accomplished using the hybrid π equivalent circuit. Two types of analysis are made; the first, in section 6.4.1, is valid for the intrinsic transistor, neglecting the base spreading resistance, and is useful for most crystal oscillator applications below 10–20 MHz. In some low-noise oscillator applications, however, it has been found desirable to use emitter degeneration to reduce $1/f$ noise. Therefore a second analysis, given in section 6.4.2, is presented to allow prediction of the amplitude of oscillation when degeneration is used. The results generally follow the same form, although the mathematics used in deriving them is considerably different.

6.4.1. Intrinsic Transistor Model*

The large-signal analysis of transistor parameters presented in this paragraph is based on the hybrid π equivalent circuit shown in Figure 6-5. The various elements of this circuit are the same as those presented in Figure 6-3, although they are represented differently in some cases. It should be understood that this circuit is only an approximate equivalent circuit of the transistor and represents some rather serious simplifications of the actual device.

The resistor $r_{bb'}$ is the base-spreading resistance and is neglected in the analysis.

The emitter resistance r_e is composed of intrinsic and extrinsic parts. The intrinsic part usually accounts for the largest portion of the resistance and, for small-signal conditions, is given by

$$r_{e0} = \frac{KT\lambda}{qI_e}; \tag{6-14}$$

at 27°C and $\lambda = 1$

$$r_{e0} = \frac{26}{I_e} \qquad \text{with } I_e \text{ in mA.} \tag{6-15}$$

Here the subscript 0 refers to a small-signal value. As will be shown later, r_e varies considerably with signal level.

The base diffusion capacitance C_{De} is given by k/r_e and generally accounts for most of the transistor input capacitance in the active region.

The diffusion capacitance is related to the gain-bandwidth product, so that

$$k \doteq \frac{1}{2\pi f_t}. \tag{6-16}$$

C_{Te} is base-to-emitter transition capacitance (junction capacitance), which depends on the size of the base-to-emitter junction. It

*The application of these results to crystal oscillators is essentially parallel to the results discussed in connection with *LC* oscillators by Holford in Mullard Technical Communications, see reference 21.

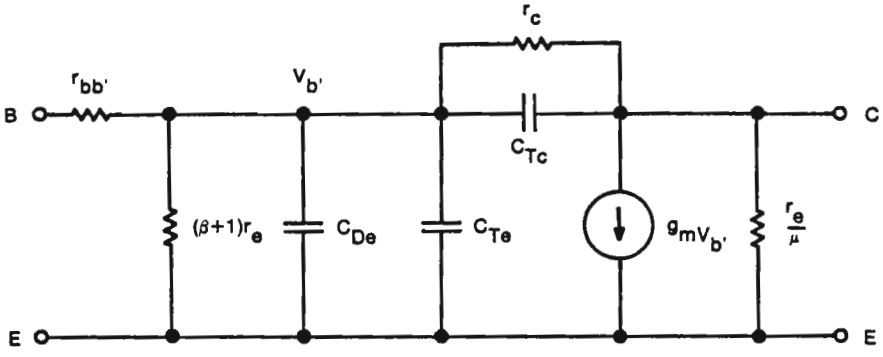


Figure 6-5. Hybrid π equivalent circuit of a transistor.

generally varies as the square root of the base-to-emitter voltage; thus:

$$C_{Te} = \frac{K_{Te}}{(V - V_{be})^{1/2}} \tag{6-17}$$

The base-to-collector transition (junction) capacitance C_{Tc} is dependent on the junction area and on the grading of the junction. It varies as some power of the applied voltage; thus:

$$C_{Tc} = \frac{K_{Tc}}{[V_{cb} + V]^{\alpha}} \tag{6-18}$$

where V is the contact potential and α is a function of the grading of the junction; α is usually between 0.5 and 0.1.

Transconductance is given approximately by $1/r_e$, and the feedback factor is given by μ which is considered to be a constant for this analysis. It is shown in Appendix G that r_e increases with signal level and is given by

$$\frac{r_e}{r_{e0}} = \frac{\left(\frac{Eq}{\lambda KT}\right) I_0 \left(\frac{Eq}{\lambda KT}\right)}{2I_1 \left(\frac{Eq}{\lambda KT}\right)} \tag{6-19}$$

where r_{e0} is the small-signal emitter resistance given by equation (6-14). E is the peak value of the base-to-emitter signal voltage as-

sumed to be given by $E \cos \omega t$. For purposes of this analysis, it is convenient to define the voltages in terms of $q/\lambda KT$ units; thus, we let

$$V = \frac{qE}{\lambda KT}. \tag{6-20}$$

At 27°C and $\lambda = 1$,

$$V = \frac{E}{26} \tag{6-21}$$

when E is in millivolts. Thus, we have

$$\frac{r_e}{r_{e0}} = \frac{VI_0(V)}{2I_1(V)} \tag{6-22}$$

$I_0(V)$ and $I_1(V)$ are hyperbolic Bessel functions of the first kind of orders zero and one, respectively. Equation (6-22) is plotted in Figure 6-6 along with its reciprocal.

From the transistor equivalent circuit, we see that most of the parameters are either proportional to or inversely proportional to r_e. Thus knowing how r_e behaves with signal voltage, we know also how the input and output resistance, the transconductance, and the input capacitance behave.

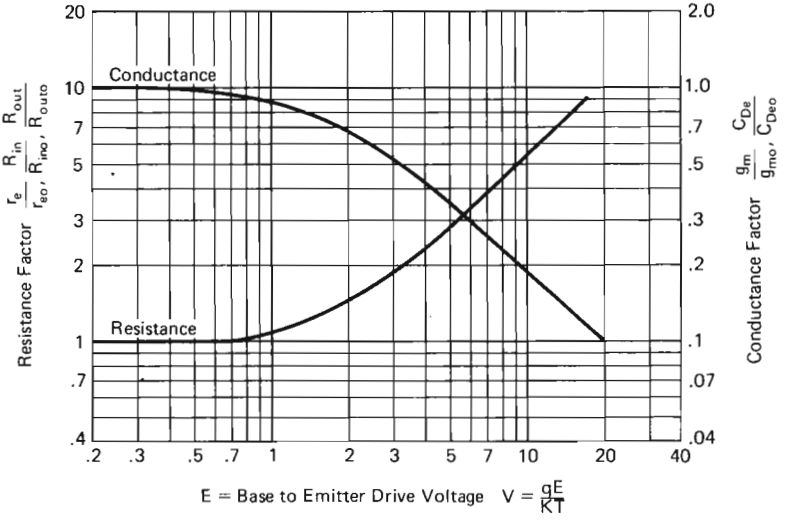


Figure 6-6. Transistor parameters versus signal voltage.

It should be pointed out that the analysis requires the small-signal parameters to be calculated at the final emitter current with signal applied. In general, this current is higher than the value with no signal. An equation is derived in appendix G which allows the final emitter current to be predicted. This is done by computing the change in the dc base-to-emitter voltage resulting from the signal. It is then only necessary to allow for this decrease in base-to-emitter voltage, V bias, when computing the values of the bias resistors. This equation is given by

$$\frac{qV_{\text{bias}}}{\lambda KT} = \ln I_0(V) \tag{6-23}$$

and is plotted in Figure 6-7.

It is possible to predict the amount of fundamental and harmonic

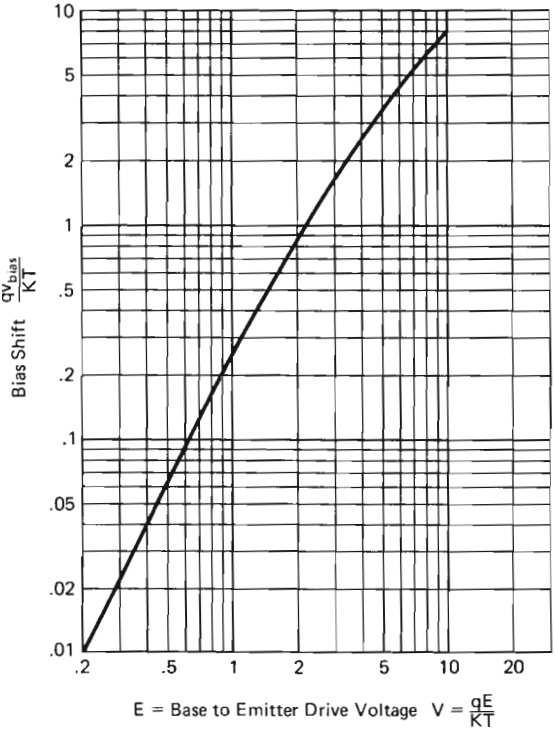


Figure 6-7. Base-to-emitter bias shift versus applied signal voltage.

signal present in the collector current when a sinusoidal signal is applied to the base. The equation predicting this behavior (see Appendix G), neglecting feedback, is given by:

$$i_c = 2I_e(\text{mean}) \left[\frac{I_1(V)}{I_0(V)} \cos \omega t + \frac{I_2(V)}{I_0(V)} \cos 2\omega t + \frac{I_3(V)}{I_0(V)} \cos 3\omega t + \cdots \right] \quad (6\text{-}24)$$

This equation is plotted in Figure 6-8 along with the equation giving the peak collector current, which is

$$i_c(\text{peak}) = I_e(\text{mean})\, e^v / I_0(V) \quad (6\text{-}25)$$

This graph may be used to determine the efficiency of transistors or oscillators used as frequency multipliers. It is interesting to note

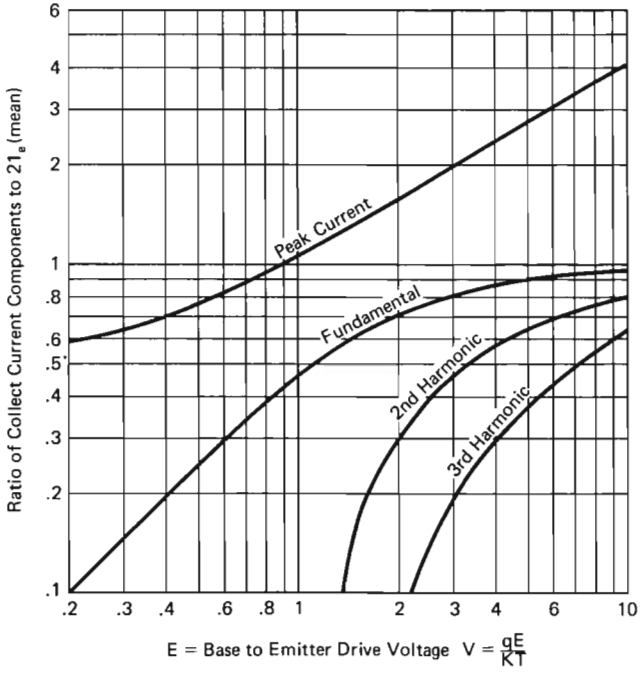


Figure 6-8. Collector current components versus applied signal voltage.

that the fundamental component of collector current approaches $2I_e$(mean) for large drive voltages.

The results presented in this paragraph are derived in Appendix G, as previously indicated. The appendix also contains a comparison of the predicted and measured results for a typical oscillator transistor using different values of emitter current.

Depending on the degree to which the assumptions made are valid, the analysis may on occasions yield a large error in the absolute value of the amplitude. In these cases the trend shown by the analysis may still be useful, however.

6.4.2. Nonlinear Model with Emitter Degeneration*

Basically the same types of curve have been derived for the case where the extrinsic emitter resistance is predominant. For this case, the equivalent circuit assumes the form shown in Figure 6-9, where R_f is the emitter degeneration resistor. Here the feedback term μ is assumed to be negligible. Also for this analysis $(r_{bb'} + R_f)_0$ is assumed to be negligible compared to $\beta(R_f + r_e)_0$. Under these conditions, it is shown in Appendix H that

$$\frac{(R_f + r_e)}{(R_f + r_e)_0} = \frac{\pi}{\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta} \tag{6-26}$$

Here again the subscript 0 refers to a small-signal value. θ is one-half the effective conduction angle in radians. The conduction angle can be computed in terms of the signal voltage and the mean emitter current by the equation:

$$\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0\pi}{E} \tag{6-27}$$

where E is the peak value of the signal voltage applied between the base and ground, assumed to be of the form $E \sin \omega t$. Equations (6-26) and (6-27) can be plotted parametrically and are given in Figure 6-10 along with the reciprocal of equation (6-26). It should be noted that if R_f is zero, the term

$$\frac{E}{I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0} = \frac{E}{I_e(\text{mean})\,r_{e0}} = \frac{Eq}{KT\lambda}$$

*The application of these results to crystal oscillators is essentially parallel to the results discussed in connection with *LC* oscillators by Holford in Mullard Technical Communications, see reference 22.

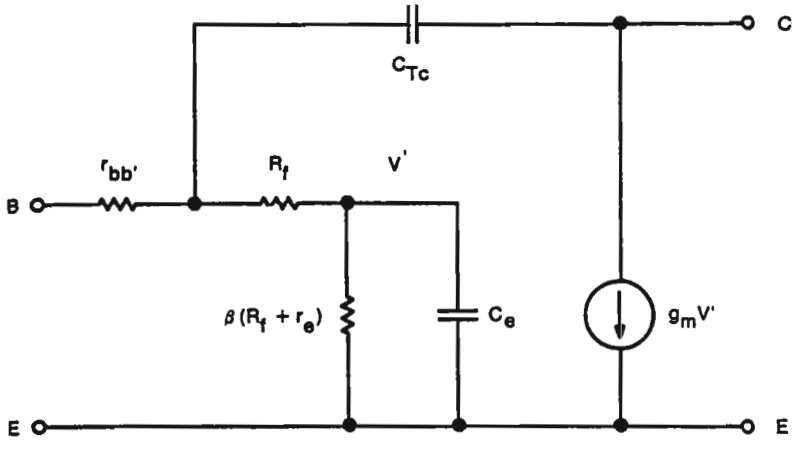


Figure 6-9. Approximate equivalent circuit with emitter degeneration.

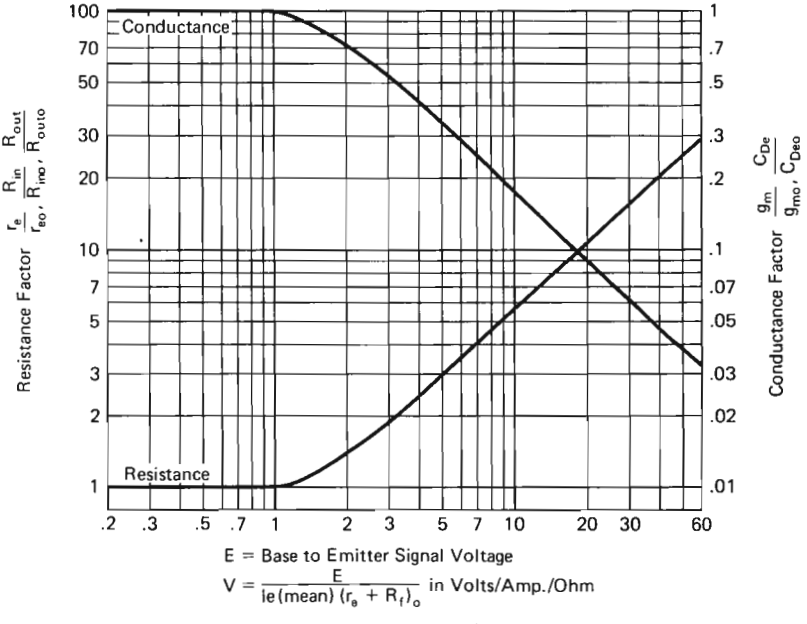


Figure 6-10. Transistor parameters versus signal voltage.

as before. The curves are not identical, however, because the latter analysis acquires a considerable error if R_f is not larger than r_e.

As before, it is possible to compute the reduction in base-to-emitter voltage due to the presence of signal, which in this case is given by

$$\frac{V_{\text{bias}}}{I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0} = \frac{\pi}{\tan\theta - \theta} + 1. \tag{6-28}$$

This equation is plotted in Figure 6-11.

It is also possible to predict the harmonic content of the collector current, the ac value of which is given by

$$i_c = I_e(\text{mean})\left\{\frac{[\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta]}{[\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta]}\sin\omega t\right.$$

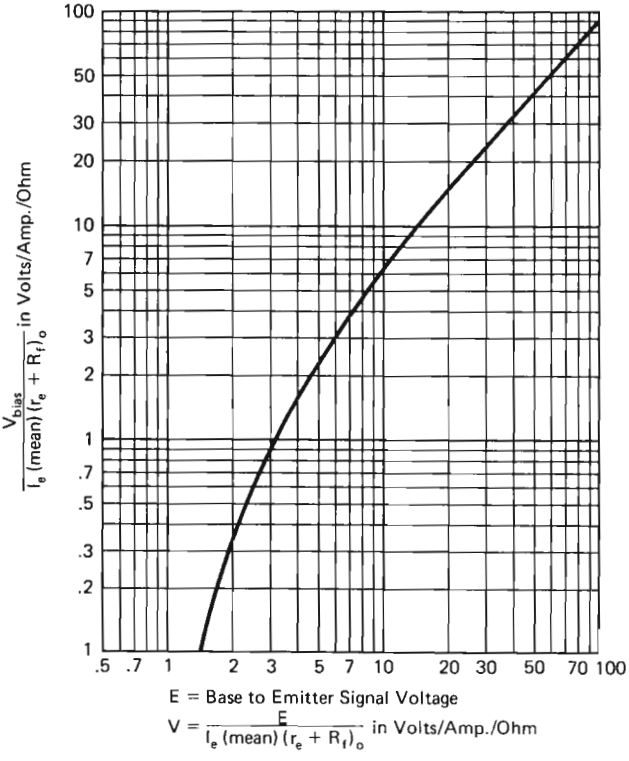


Figure 6-11. Base-to-emitter bias shift versus applied signal voltage.

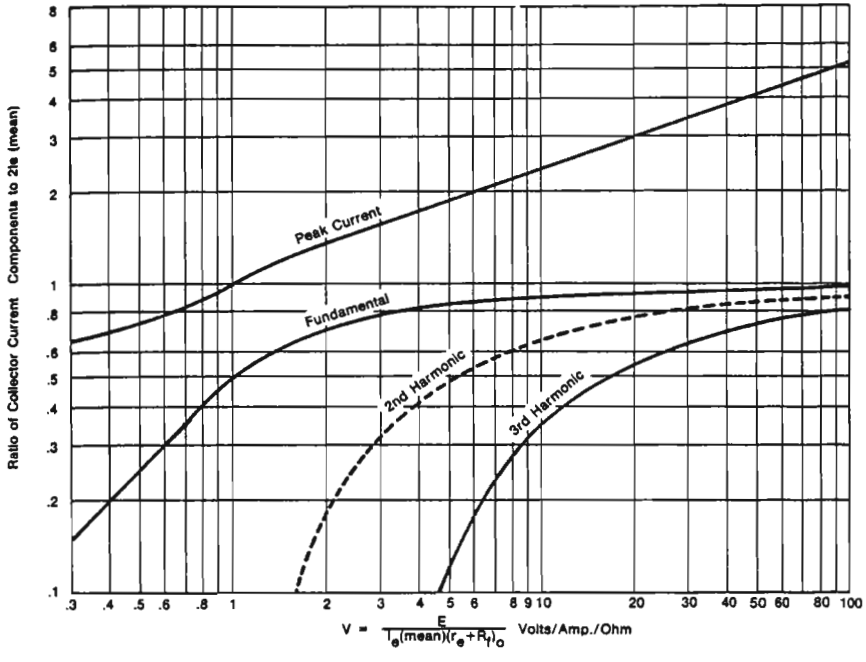


Figure 6-12. Collector current components versus applied signal voltage.

$$+\frac{[\cos\theta \sin 2\theta - \sin\theta - \tfrac{1}{3}\sin 3\theta]}{[\theta \sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta]}\cos 2\omega t$$

$$+\frac{[\tfrac{2}{3}\cos\theta \sin 3\theta - \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta - \tfrac{1}{4}\sin 4\theta]}{[\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta]}\sin 3\omega t + \cdots\Bigg\} \quad (6\text{-}29)$$

This equation is plotted in Figure 6-12 along with the peak collector current, which is given by the equation

$$i_c(\text{peak}) = I_e(\text{mean})\frac{\pi(1-\cos\theta)}{\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta} \quad (6\text{-}30)$$

The derivation of the results presented in this section is made in Appendix H.

7
Oscillator Circuits

This chapter treats a number of crystal oscillator configurations in detail. Design information as well as practical schematic diagrams for the recommended circuits are presented. In addition, the characteristics of the various recommended oscillator types are summarized and compared in table 7-1.

7.1. PIERCE, COLPITTS, AND CLAPP OSCILLATORS

The Pierce, Colpitts, and Clapp oscillators are actually the same circuit but with the ground point at a different location. Figure 7-1 shows the basic ac schematic diagram.

In the Pierce oscillator, the ac ground is at the emitter; in the Colpitts, at the collector; and in the Clapp, at the base. In a practical circuit, the stray capacitances and biasing resistors shunt different elements for each of the three configurations, making the circuits perform somewhat differently. Each of the circuits can be made to cover a broad range of crystal frequencies. These circuits are among the most noncritical of crystal oscillators and the permissible component tolerances are generally more than adequate. The output power is only moderate, however. Of the three possible configurations, the Pierce is the most desirable, electrically. This results from the stray capacitances appearing across capacitors C_1 and C_2, which generally are quite large. In the Clapp and Colpitts configurations, a good deal of the stray capacitance appears across the crystal, limiting the high-frequency application to about 30 MHz.

In the Pierce and Clapp oscillators, the base-biasing resistors are across large capacitors and thus do not affect the performance of the circuit. In the Colpitts configuration, however, the biasing resistors are across the crystal and degrade performance at lower frequencies (below about 3 MHz). The Colpitts configuration also is more sus-

Table 7-1. Recommended Crystal Oscillator Types.

Oscillator Type	Recommended Frequency Range	Relative Frequency Stability	Power Output	Waveform	Ability to Operate Properly When Circuit Stray Capacitance and Inductance Are Large	Ability to Operate Over a Band of Frequencies Without Retuning	Ease of Design	Remarks	Paragraph
Gate	16 kHz to 20 MHz	Low	Moderate	Square wave	Good	High	Moderate	Recommended for logic level output in low-stability applications.	7.6
Pierce	100 kHz to 20 MHz	High	Moderate	Poor at low freq, fair to good above 3 MHz	Very good	High	Simple	Recommended unless one side of crystal must be grounded.	7.2
Colpitts	1 to 20 MHz	Moderate	Moderate	Fair to good	Good	High	Moderate	Generally inferior to Pierce and Clapp. Recommended if Pierce and Clapp cannot be used.	7.3
Clapp	2 to 20 MHz	Moderate to high	Moderate	Fair to good	Good	High	Moderate	Generally inferior to Pierce. Recommended if one side of crystal must be grounded. Should not be used with low supply voltages.	7.4
Impedance inverting Pierce	20 to 75 MHz	High	Low	Good	Fair	Low	Difficult	Recommended if large stray inductances cannot be eliminated from crystal switch.	7.2.9 thru 7.2.11
Grounded base	20 to 150 MHz	Moderate	High	Good	Poor	Low	Moderate	Recommended if stray inductance and capacitance can be kept low.	7.5

ceptible to squegging. These problems can be overcome using a field effect transistor for lower frequencies, since very large gate-biasing resistors then can be used.

The Clapp oscillator has a unique disadvantage in that free-running oscillations can occur if a choke is used to supply the dc voltage to the collector. The problem is best solved by putting a fairly large resistor in series with the choke or by using a resistor alone. The resistance must be kept large, however, since it shunts the crystal. For this reason, the Clapp oscillator is not desirable for use with low supply voltages.

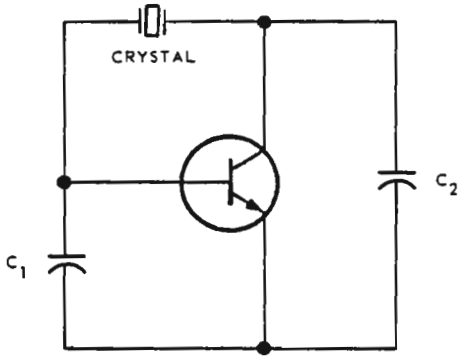


Figure 7.1. Pierce, Colpitts, and Clapp oscillators: basic ac schematic diagram.

Of the three possible configurations, the Pierce oscillator is generally the simplest and the Colpitts the most difficult to design. The Pierce oscillator has the disadvantage that one side of the crystal cannot be grounded, often making it undesirable for use with crystal switches.

The frequency stability of the Pierce oscillator is generally in the range from 0.0002 to 0.0005 percent worse than the stability of the crystal alone. The Clapp oscillator is slightly inferior to the Pierce and the Colpitts is slightly inferior to the Clapp in this respect. If no adjustment is provided to put the crystal exactly on frequency, additional frequency errors will be present as a result of differences in transistors, components, and crystal resistance.

7.2. PIERCE OSCILLATOR

7.2.1. Small-Signal Analysis

The general oscillator theory presented in Chapter 2 can be applied conveniently to the Pierce oscillator. Specifically, the conditions of oscillation are fulfilled in the following way. Referring to Figure 7-2, the basic phase shift network is composed of C_1, C_2, and the crystal, which looks inductive. Capacitors C_1 and C_2 are normally so large that they effectively swamp out the transistor output and input impedances. If this is the case, and if the effective resistance of the crystal is low, then the following explanation is applicable. The crystal looks inductive and is series resonant with capacitors C_1 and

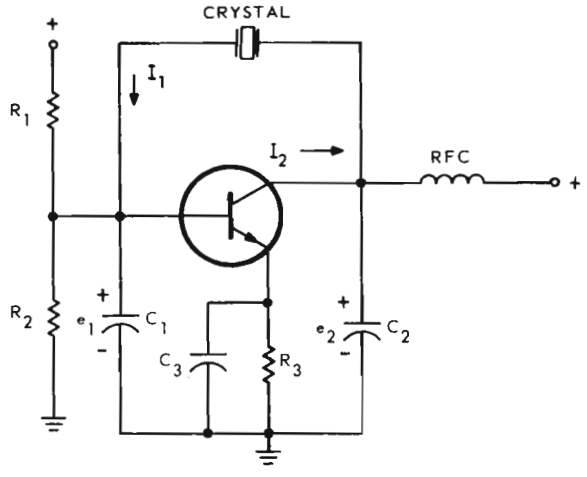


Figure 7-2. Pierce oscillator circuit: schematic diagram.

C_2. The frequency of oscillation automatically adjusts itself so that this is true. Therefore, the combination of the crystal and C_1 alone has a net inductive reactance at the operating frequency.

Consequently, current I_1 lags voltage e_2 by 90 degrees. Voltage e_1 being developed across capacitor C_1 lags current I_1 by 90 degrees, making it 180 degrees behind collector voltage e_2. Since the combination of C_1 and the crystal is resonant with C_2, the collector looks into a resistive load.

The phase shift through the transistor is 180 degrees and the total phase shift around the loop is 360 degrees.

The condition of a loop gain of unity can be found in the following manner. It can be shown (see Appendix E) that the ratio of the voltages

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} \doteq -\left(\frac{C_2}{C_1}\right). \tag{7-1}$$

Putting this in terms of reactances gives

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} \doteq -\left(\frac{X_1}{X_2}\right). \tag{7-2}$$

For oscillation to take place, the transistor gain A must be such that

$$A\left(\frac{e_1}{e_2}\right) \geqslant 1. \tag{7-3}$$

The transistor voltage gain is approximately given by

$$A = -g_{fe} Z_L \tag{7-4}$$

where g_{fe} is the transconductance of the transistor and Z_L is the load seen by the collector. It can be shown (see Appendix E) that this load is given by

$$Z_L \doteq \frac{X_2^2}{R_e},$$

where

$$X_2 = -\frac{1}{\omega C_2}. \tag{7-5}$$

Then

$$A = \frac{-g_{fe}(X_2)^2}{R_e} \tag{7-6}$$

and substituting this into equation 7-3 gives

$$-\left[\frac{g_{fe}(X_2)^2}{R_e}\right]\left[\frac{e_1}{e_2}\right] \geqslant 1 \tag{7-7}$$

but since

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = -\left(\frac{X_1}{X_2}\right), \qquad \frac{g_{fe}(X_2)^2}{R_e}\left(\frac{X_1}{X_2}\right) \geqslant 1 \tag{7-8}$$

or

$$g_{fe} X_1 X_2 \geqslant R_e \tag{7-9}$$

The loop gain is then

$$\left(\frac{g_{fe} X_1 X_2}{R_e}\right) \tag{7-10}$$

and must be greater than unity. To a first approximation we may use $g_{fe} = 0.04 I_e$, where g_{fe} is in mhos and I_e is in milliamperes.

This explanation is somewhat idealized because of the assumptions made. A rigorous analysis of the Pierce oscillator is given in Appendix B. The results are.

$$g_{fe} X_1 X_2 \geqslant R_e + K_1 \qquad \text{(gain equation)} \qquad (7\text{-}11)$$

$$X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0 + K_2 \qquad \text{(phase shift equation)} \qquad (7\text{-}12)$$

where

g_{fe} = real part of the forward transfer admittance, sometimes referred to as the transconductance.
$X_1 = -1/\omega C_1$,
$X_2 = -1/\omega C_2$,
R_e = effective crystal resistance, and
X_e = crystal reactance.

K_1 and K_2 are corrective terms which are negligible if the previous assumptions are fulfilled. They are as follows:

$$K_1 = -X_1(X_2 + X_e)\, g_{ie} - X_2(X_1 + X_e)\, g_{oe} - R_e X_1 X_2 [g_{ie} g_{oe} + b_{fe} b_{re}] - b_{re} g_{fe} X_1 X_2 X_e \qquad (7\text{-}13)$$

$$K_2 = b_{fe} X_1 X_2 + X_1 X_2 X_e g_{ie} g_{oe} - R_e [X_1 g_{ie} + X_2 g_{oe}] + b_{re} X_1 X_2 + b_{re} b_{fe} X_1 X_2 X_e - b_{re} g_{fe} X_1 X_2 R_e. \qquad (7\text{-}14)$$

For definitions of the Y-parameters, refer to Chapter 6. The input and output short-circuit capacitances of the transistor may be accounted for by including them in C_1 and C_2, respectively. If the oscillator is loaded, the load must be included in the output admittance of the transistor; that is, g_{oe} in the equations should be [g_{oe} of the transistor + $(1/R_L)$], where R_L is the load.

In the case of field effect transistors at low frequencies, $y_{fe} = g_m$, $y_{ie} = 0$, $y_{oe} = 1/r_d$, $y_{re} = 0$, and the equations simplify as follows:

$$g_m X_1 X_2 \geqslant R_e - \frac{X_2(X_1 + X_e)}{r_d} \qquad (7\text{-}15)$$

$$X_1 + X_2 + X_e = -\frac{R_e X_2}{r_d} \qquad (7\text{-}16)$$

Equations (7-11) and (7-12) can be used best by successive approximation. The first values of X_1 and X_2 may be calculated assuming

that $K_1 = K_2 = 0$. These values of X_1 and X_2 then are substituted into the total equations. It should be obvious then which terms are negligible, and they are eliminated. The equations then are rewritten using the significant terms. Usually the remaining equation will be only moderately complicated.

In some cases the Y-parameters of the transistor may not be known or, from other considerations, the reader may elect to use a purely experimental approach in designing a Pierce oscillator. For such an approach, the following guidelines can be given. In general, C_1 and C_2 should be as large as possible but still allow the circuit to oscillate with two to three times the maximum permissible crystal resistance.* This usually results in the crystal reactance (X_e) being quite small. A trimmer capacitor is then placed in series with the crystal to bring it on frequency. (X_e in the equation then represents the reactance of the crystal in series with the trimmer.)

In the higher portion of the frequency range, C_1 and C_2 in series may become less than the desired crystal load capacitance for minimum gain requirements. The crystal then may be put on frequency by placing a variable inductor in series with it. This may be undesirable, however, since it can lead to free-running oscillations. A better solution may be to let $C_1 = C_2 = 2C_L$. This condition leads to a maximum X_1X_2 product for a given load capacitance C_L. If this does not allow sufficient gain, then a small inductor in series with the crystal must be used.

Regardless of the frequency, it is desirable to make

$$|X_1| << \frac{1}{g_{ie}}, \tag{7-17}$$

and

$$|X_2| << \frac{1}{g_{oe}}. \tag{7-18}$$

This minimizes the effects of transistor input and output admittances.

For a highly stable oscillator, the loading should be light. A good

*This can be determined by adding resistance in series with the crystal until oscillation will not occur.

rule to follow is to tap considerably farther down than for optimum matching. An example of this is shown in Figure 7-3, (see section 7.2.3 below), where the ratio of C_4/C_2 is larger than that required for maximum output.

Best stability occurs if C_1 and C_2 are as large as possible, because they swamp out any change in transistor input or output capacitance.

To a first approximation, it can be shown that maximum stability results if

$$\frac{C_2}{C_1} = \left[\frac{dC_{out}/dT}{dC_{in}/dT}\right]^{1/2} \tag{7-19}$$

where dC_{out}/dT is the change in collector-to-emitter capacity with respect to the parameter being studied, and dC_{in}/dT is the variation in base-to-emitter capacity with respect to the same parameter. The ratio C_2/C_1 usually is determined by other factors, however, such as crystal load capacitance, output voltage, or crystal drive. Since the load on the collector is $Z_L \doteq X_2^2/R_e$, larger outputs usually are obtained if X_2 is made large (small C_2).

It should be remembered that the equations derived using the Y-parameters are based on a linear analysis and predict starting conditions only. They give no indication concerning the final amplitude or of the crystal drive level. A method for determining the steady-state value of drive level as well as the output voltage is discussed in the following paragraphs.

7.2.2. Large-Signal Analysis

If the starting conditions for oscillation are satisfied, the amplitude of oscillation continues to grow until nonlinear effects reduce the effective loop gain to unity. If the starting conditions are satisfied at more than one frequency, oscillations begin at both frequencies and the one reaching the saturation amplitude first causes the other to die out. Normally, multiple or spurious oscillation is not a problem and will not be considered at this time.

In a transistor oscillator, the predominant nonlinearity occurs because the base-to-emitter junction is cut off during part of the cycle. As discussed in section 3.2 of Chapter 3, under certain conditions of biasing, collector saturation may also occur. Generally

collector saturation tends to increase the dependence of the oscillator on the supply voltage and is therefore avoided.

Assuming that collector saturation does not occur, the amplitude of oscillation can be determined by applying the nonlinear results of section 6.4 of Chapter 6. To accomplish this, the small-signal analysis of section 7.2.1 (above) is first completed.

The small-signal transconductance required for oscillation is found from equation (7-11) and is:

$$g_m = \frac{R_e + K_1}{X_1 X_2} \tag{7-20}$$

If the actual small-signal transconductance of the transistor is given by g_{m0}, then the excess small-signal loop gain is g_{m0}/g_m. This value is used to enter the graph of Figure 6-6 and determines the value of V which will be required to reduce the loop gain to unity. The value V is the normalized base-to-emitter voltage. The actual voltage is $E \cos \omega t$ where $E = VKT/q$. As noted earlier $KT/q \doteq 26$ mV at room temperature. Then using equation (7-1), the approximate collector voltage is found to be

$$e_2 = -e_1 \left(\frac{C_1}{C_2}\right) \tag{7-21}$$

where $e_1 = E/\sqrt{2}$ volts rms.

The crystal drive level is then given by

$$P_c = \frac{e_2^2 R_e}{X_2^2} \tag{7-22}$$

and should not exceed the manufacturer's specification.

The graph of Figure 6-6 can also be used to determine the increase in the effective input and output impedances of the transistor and the reduction in input capacitance:

$$g_{ie} \doteq \frac{g_{ieo}}{R_{\text{in}}/R_{\text{in}o}} \tag{7-23}$$

The transistor input capacitance was lumped into C_1; therefore it will also decrease with amplitude, causing a slight increase in frequency. If desired, the new values of g_{ie}, g_{oe}, and C_1 can be used in calculating the K_1 used in equation (7-20).

The graphs of Chapter 6 also provide an indication of the bias shift resulting from oscillation. This is shown in Figure 6-7. The value of V found earlier is used to determine the reduction in base-to-emitter voltage. An appropriate adjustment can then be made to the bias network to establish the desired steady-state value of emitter current.

Finally, the graph of Figure 6-8 can be used to determine the harmonic content of the collector current. Since the collector feeds the input of the π network containing the crystal and since for practical purposes the crystal is an open circuit at the harmonic frequencies, the collector voltage waveform can be determined by multiplying the appropriate harmonic current by the reactance of C_2 at that frequency.

The impedance seen by the collector at the fundamental frequency is approximately given by

$$Z = \frac{X_2^2}{R_e}. \tag{7-24}$$

Therefore the ratio of harmonic voltage to fundamental voltage is given by

$$\frac{e_n}{e_{\text{fund}}} = \frac{i_n(X_2/n)}{i_{\text{fund}}(X_2^2/R_e)} \tag{7-25}$$

$$\frac{e_n}{e_{\text{fund}}} = \frac{i_n R_e}{i_{\text{fund}} n X_2} \tag{7-26}$$

Where n is the harmonic number, i_n and i_{fund} can be read from the graph of Figure 6-8 knowing V, or from equation (6-24) by taking i_n/i_{fund} as the ratio of hyperbolic Bessel functions $I_n(V)/I_1(V)$.

If the oscillator is loaded heavily, Z must be appropriately adjusted and the fundamental component of the waveform will be reduced, compared to the harmonics.

Since the base voltage of the transistor is established by the crystal current through C_1, it has the best waveform.

In some applications a tank circuit tuned to a harmonic of the crystal frequency is inserted in the collector circuit to produce a frequency multiplier. This procedure generally works quite well, and the graph of Figure 6-8 can be used to estimate the harmonic output power.

In some applications of frequency standards, it is desirable to use emitter degeneration on the transistor, for example to reduce the $1/f$ noise. In these applications the graphs of Figures 6-6 through 6-8 do not apply. A piecewise linear analysis has been included, however, which gives good results if sufficient feedback is used.

This analysis assumes that the transistor, with feedback, is linear during that part of the cycle when it conducts and is completely shut off during the remainder of the cycle. The results are presented in Figures 6-10, 6-11, and 6-12. These graphs can be used in place of Figures 6-6, 6-7, and 6-8 in the previous description. The actual base-to-emitter voltage is found to be

$$E = VI_e(\text{mean})\,(R_f + r_e)_0 \tag{7-27}$$

where R_f is the emitter degeneration resistor, r_e is the intrinsic emitter resistance, I_e(mean) is the steady-state emitter current, and E is the peak base-to-ground voltage in volts.

In general the nonlinear analyses are not as accurate as the analyses we are accustomed to seeing based on linear models in small-signal applications. The results are, however, quite useful in the initial design of oscillator circuits and give a reasonable approximation when the cutoff frequency of the transistor is more than 10 or 20 times the operating frequency.

7.2.3. 1- to 3-MHz Pierce Oscillator*

Typical performance characteristics for the 1- to 3-MHz Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-3 are given below.

a. Crystal: CR-18/U or similar.
b. Load capacitance: 32 pF.
c. Drive level: 1–6 mW, depending on frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.

*A number of typical oscillator circuits are presented in this chapter. The performance indicated is that observed on a single circuit and may vary considerably with layout and components used. The circuits are listed as starting points only and should not be used without optimization and thorough testing in the configuration actually used. (See Chap. 8.)

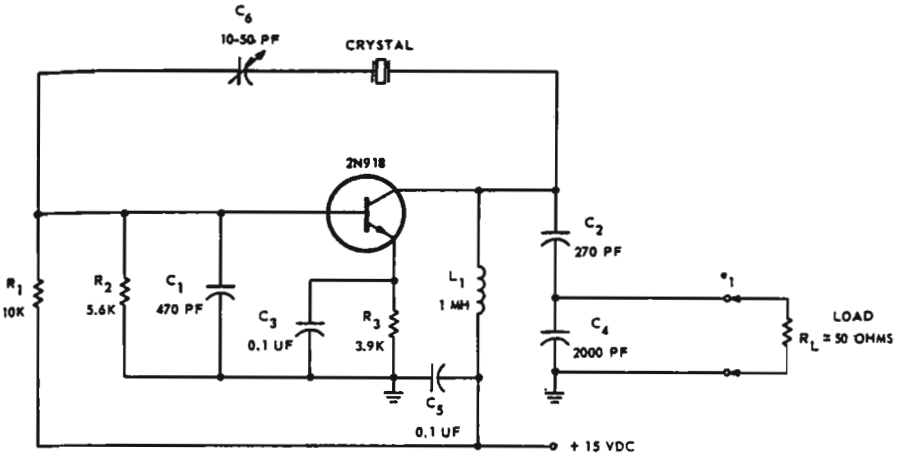


Figure 7-3. 1- to 3-MHz Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 1.5 parts in 10^9/°C at 1 MHz, and 1.6 parts in 10^8/°C at 3 MHz.
4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 3 parts in 10^7 at 1 MHz, and 1 part in 10^7 at 3 MHz for a 10-percent supply voltage change.

e. Output: For $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.25–0.40 V, depending on frequency and crystal resistance. Waveform at 1 MHz is poor.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Power input: 40 mW.

NOTE. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 1- to-3-MHz range, some adjustment of C_6 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.2.4. 1- to 10-MHz Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 1- to 10-MHz Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-4 are given below.

a. Crystal: CR-18/U or similar.
b. Load capacitance: 32 pF.
c. Drive level: 0.75–4 mW, depending on the frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:

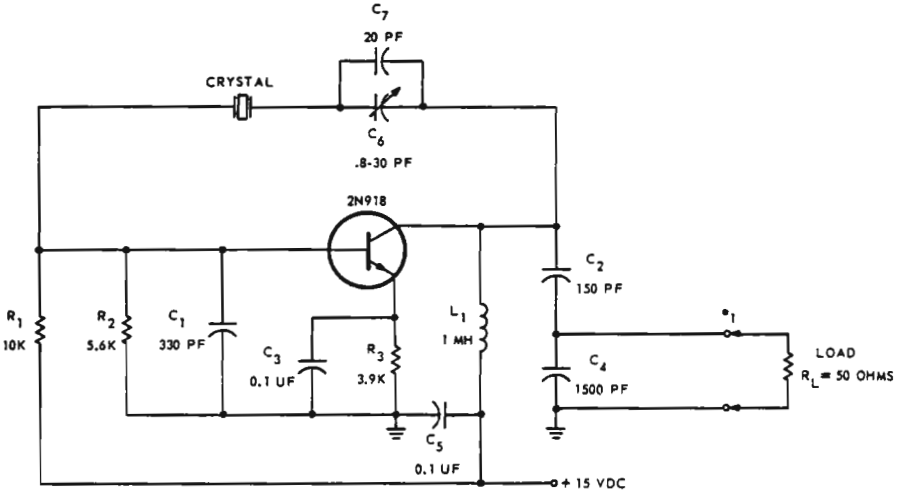


Figure 7-4. 1- to 10-MHz Pierce oscillator circuit: schematic diagram.

1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.
2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 3 parts in 10^8/°C at 1 MHz, 2.2 parts in 10^8/°C at 5 MHz, and 1.5 parts in 10^8/°C at 10 MHz.
4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 1.5 parts in 10^6 at 1 MHz, 2.5 parts in 10^7 at 3 MHz, and 2.3 parts in 10^7 at 10 MHz for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.

e. Output: For $R_L = 50\,\Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.02 V at 10 MHz, and 0.35 V at 3 MHz and 1 MHz. e_1 varies considerably with crystal resistance. The waveform below 3 MHz is poor. Distortion at 1 MHz is 30 percent; at 5 MHz, it is 6 percent.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Input power: 35 mW.

NOTE. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 1- to 10-MHz range, some adjustment of C_6 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.2.5. 10- to 20-MHz Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 10- to 20-MHz Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-5 are given below.

a. Crystal: CR-18/U, CR-66/U, or similar.
b. Load capacitance: 32 or 30 pF.
c. Drive level: 0.3–1.0 mW, depending on the frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from -55°C to +105°C for CR-18/U, ±0.002 percent for CR-66/U.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 2.6 parts in 10^8/°C at 10 MHz and 2 parts in 10^8/°C at 20 MHz.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 2 parts in 10^7 at 20 MHz and 4 parts in 10^8 at 10 MHz for a 10-percent supply voltage variation.
e. Output (see Note 1): For $R_L = 100\,\Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.05–0.10 V, depending on frequency and crystal resistance. Voltage e_2 is in the range from 1.5 to 2.0 V.
f. Permissible load: $100 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Input power: 15 mW.

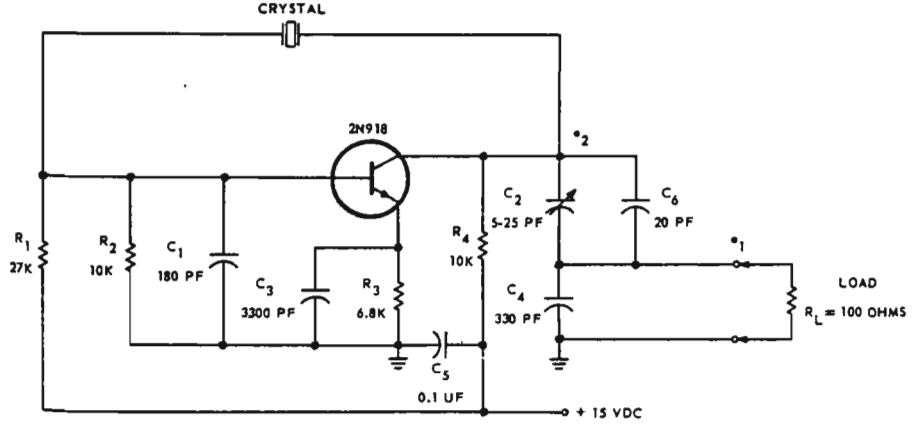


Figure 7-5. 10- to 30-MHz Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

NOTE 1. The output power can be increased by a factor of 3–5 by making several modifications. Change R_1 to 5.6 kΩ, R_3 to 10 kΩ, R_4 to 47 μH, C_1 to 220 pF, and R_L to 50 Ω. However, the frequency instability contribution of the oscillator circuitry is increased by roughly the same factor.

NOTE 2. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 10- to 20-MHz range, some adjustment of C_2 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.2.6. Overtone Pierce Oscillator

The Pierce oscillator, as shown in Figure 7-2, cannot be used with overtone crystals. The circuit can oscillate with less gain on the fundamental frequency of the crystal than on an overtone. It is therefore necessary to provide some means of preventing the unwanted oscillation. If the collector capacitance is replaced by a tank circuit, this can be done conveniently. From equation (7-9) it can be seen that the reactances X_1 and X_2 must be of like sign for oscillation to take place. If the tank circuit is resonant between the fundamental and third overtone (or third and fifth overtones, if fifth-overtone crystals are to be used), oscillation of the unwanted modes will be prevented because the tank is inductive and has a positive sign. A capacitive reactance still appears at the desired frequency, however, and the desired oscillation can take place.

Equations (7-11) and (7-12) may be used to analyze the circuit provided the reactance of the tank circuit is substituted for X_2 in the equations. It can be shown that

$$X_2 = \frac{X_L}{1 - (f/f_r)^2},$$

where L and C_2 form the tank circuit, $X_L = 2\pi fL$, and $f_r = 1/2\pi\sqrt{LC_2}$. The effective output conductance of the transistor must be modified by adding the shunt conductance of the tank if it is not negligible. The tank conductance is given by $G_L = 1/QX_L$.

Above about 50 MHz, currently available transistors do not possess a sufficiently large y_{fe} to oscillate with 32-pF crystals and still maintain adequate reserve gain. If crystals are operated at a 20-pF load

capacitance, the upper range can be extended to about 75 MHz. The reason for this can be seen from equations (7-11) and (7-12): $X_e \doteq -(X_1 + X_2)$, and since X_e for a given load capacitance is decreasing as the frequency increases, X_1 and X_2 also must be made to decrease. The product $X_1 X_2$ for a given value of $(X_1 + X_2)$ is largest when $X_1 = X_2$ and is given by $X_e^2/4$.

The transconductance required for oscillation then is given by:

$$g_{fe} = \frac{4R_e}{X_e^2}$$

This increases as the square of the frequency. Unfortunately, the effective resistance of a crystal increases as the load capacitance is made smaller according to the relationship

$$R_e = R_1 \left(\frac{C_L + C_0}{C_L} \right)^2$$

and a C_L of 20 pF is about the limit for crystals having a C_0 of 4 pF. Thus, the use of a parallel resonant Pierce oscillator is not practical above about 75 MHz. The use of any parallel resonant oscillator above 30 MHz has a serious disadvantage in that standard crystals which are ground to be on frequency at series resonance cannot be used. The parallel resonant Pierce oscillator has a major advantage, however, in that it is practically impossible for free-running oscillations to take place. Series resonant oscillators have a potential to free-run through the C_0 of the crystal if not designed carefully. Figure 7-6 is an example of a Pierce oscillator which can be used with overtone crystals.

7.2.7. 25-MHz Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 25-MHz Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-6 are given below.

a. Crystal: Fundamental or overtone.
b. Maximum resistance: 50 Ω.
c. Load capacitance: 32 pF.
d. Drive level: 2 mW.

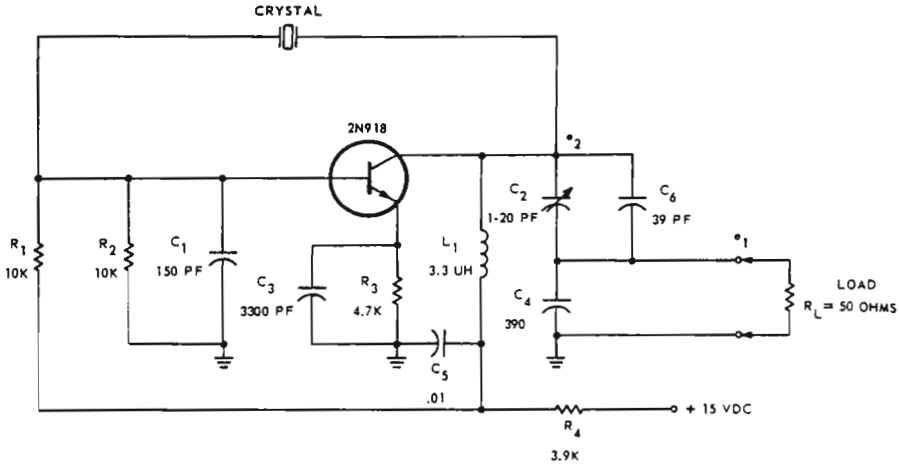


Figure 7-6. 25-MHz Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

e. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.002 to ±0.005 percent from -55°C to +105°C, depending on crystal type.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 3 parts in 10^9/°C with third-overtone crystal.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 2.3 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent supply voltage change with overtone crystal.
f. Output: If $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.1 V. The voltage e_2 is approximately 1.2 V. The output variation versus temperature is approximately ±6 percent from -55°C to +100°C.
g. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
h. Input power: 22 mW.

7.2.8. Impedance-Inverting Pierce Oscillator

The Pierce oscillator can be modified to use series resonant crystals. This is done by adding an inductor in series with the crystal to bring its frequency down to series resonance. Several advantages result from such a modification. First, standard, series resonant overtone crystals can be used. Also the reactances X_1 and X_2 can be made larger so that the transistor gain requirement is decreased. The power output also can be increased substantially.

The addition of a series inductor has several disadvantages, the most important of which is susceptibility to free running. If the inductor is relatively large, free-running oscillations may occur through the crystal C_0 instead of through the motional arm of the quartz. This is particularly true if the tank circuit is tuned so that the crystal frequency is being pulled high.

Free running can be alleviated if the crystal C_0 is resonated out by placing an inductor across it. It is then possible, however, for the oscillator to free-run below the crystal frequency through the C_0 compensating inductor. This sometimes occurs if the tank circuit is tuned so that the crystal frequency is being pulled low. Both of these free-running problems can be alleviated often by de-Q-ing the C_0 compensating inductor so that a circuit similar to that of Figure 7-8 (see section 7.2.10 below) results. Caution should be exercised here, since shunting the crystal with low impedances may increase the tendency of the oscillator to jump to a crystal spurious response.

Equations (7-11) and (7-12) may be used to analyze the series resonant Pierce oscillator if it is remembered that the quantity X_e includes both the reactance of the crystal and the inductor in series with it.

If a crystal switch with a significant amount of stray capacitance

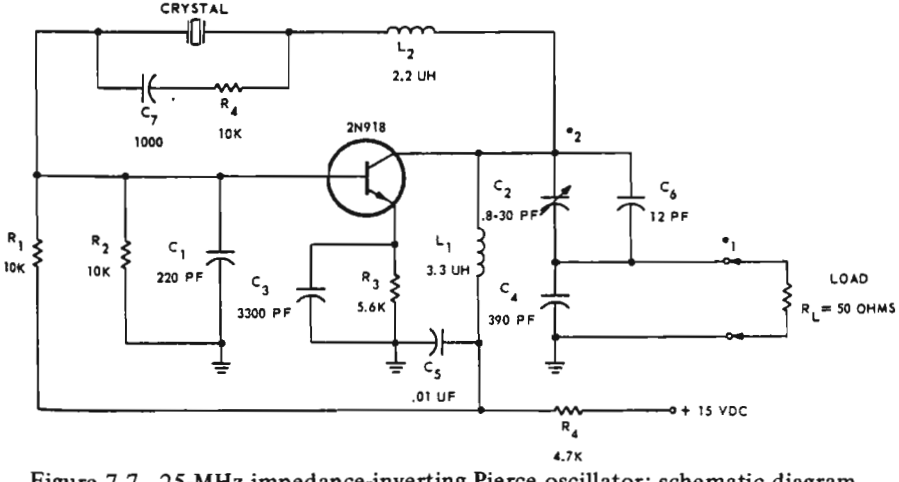


Figure 7-7. 25-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

is to be used, it usually is better to locate the crystals and switch on the base side of the series inductor, as the circuit is less susceptible to stray capacitance on that side of the inductor.

In the design of VHF Pierce oscillators, excessive crystal drive is often a problem. This usually can be solved by decreasing the transistor emitter current until an acceptable drive level is obtained.

The Pierce oscillator family cannot be tuned for maximum output; they must be tuned for on-frequency operation. This may be a considerable disadvantage for field maintenance.

Figures 7-7, 7-8, and 7-9 are examples of impedance-inverting Pierce oscillators, and are included as a guide for designing such circuits.

7.2.9. 25-MHz Impedance-Inverting Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 25-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-7 are given below.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-67/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Nominally 2 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.0025 percent.

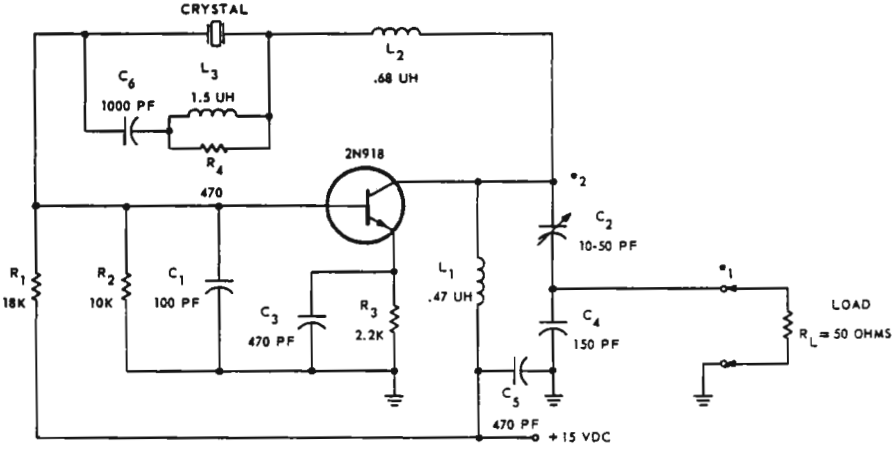


Figure 7-8. 50-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 1.6 parts in 10^8/°C.
4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 1 part in 10^7 for a 10-percent variation in supply voltage.

e. Output: If $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.15 V. Distortion is about 2.5 percent. The voltage e_2 is on the order of 2.5 V. Output voltage variation over the temperature range from -55°C to +105°C is approximately ±8 percent.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L < \infty$.
g. Input power: 20 mW.

7.2.10. 50-MHz Impedance-Inverting Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 50-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator shown in Fig 7-8 are given below.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-84/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: 1 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.002 percent from -55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 3 parts in 10^9/°C.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 1.5 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent supply voltage variation.
e. Output: For $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_i is approximately 0.3 V, and e_2 is on the order of 1.5 V. The output voltage change with temperature is approximately ±10 percent from -55°C to +100°C.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Input power: 40 mW.

7.2.11. 75-MHz Impedance-Inverting Pierce Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 75-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator shown in Figure 7-9 are given below.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-56/U.

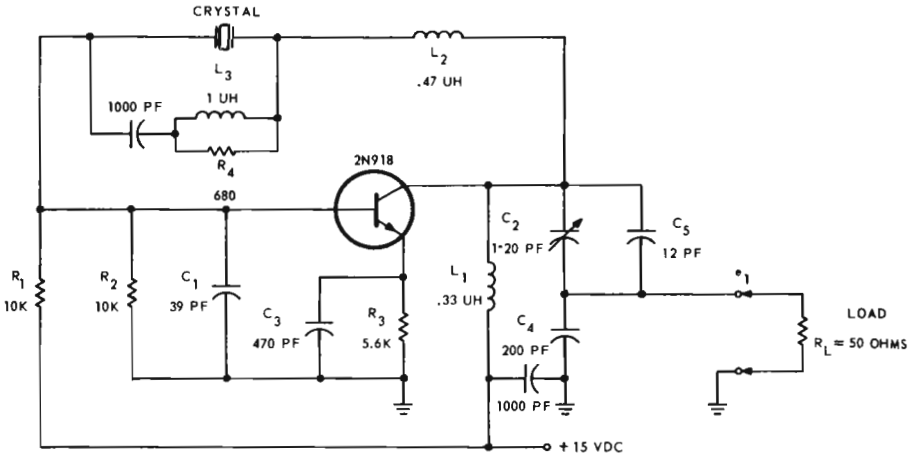


Figure 7-9. 75-MHz impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Approximately 0.6 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 4.2 parts in 10^9/°C.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 1 ppm for a 10-percent supply voltage variation.
e. Output: For $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.05 V. The output voltage change with temperature is approximately ±15 percent from −55°C to +100°C.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Input power: 30 mW.

7.3. COLPITTS OSCILLATOR

The Colpitts oscillator is actually a Pierce oscillator with the collector rather than the emitter at ac ground. If appropriate allowances are made for strays, the Pierce oscillator equations can be used for this circuit also. It may be desirable, however, to look at the Colpitts

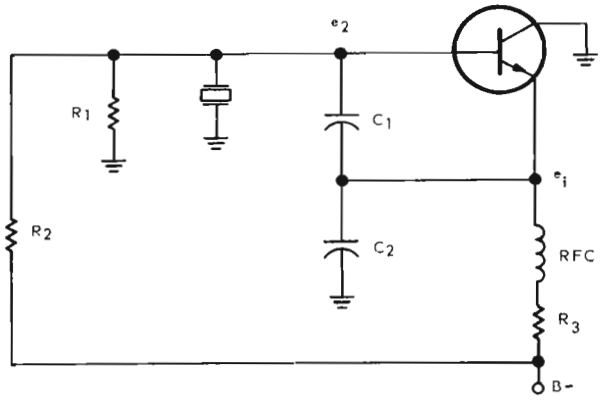


Figure 7-10. Colpitts crystal oscillator: schematic diagram.

circuit as a unique circuit analyzed in its own way. This gives a better feel for the quantities involved. (See Figure 7-10.) The Colpitts oscillator behaves quite differently from the Pierce oscillator in certain respects. The most important difference is in the biasing arrangement, which may present problems for the Colpitts circuit. The resistors R_1 and R_2 are not entirely negligible for low frequencies and may have several degrading effects. They may increase the effective resistance of the crystal branch of the circuit, thus reducing its Q in addition to decreasing the loop gain. They also may cause relaxation-type oscillations under certain conditions. Both of these problems can be reduced by using field effect transistors (FET). Temperature stability is somewhat worse with an FET, however.

The Colpitts oscillator can be thought of as an emitter-follower and a capacitive tapped tank circuit, as shown in Figure 7-11.

If capacitors C_1 and C_2 are large enough so that the input and output impedances of the transistor are effectively swamped, and if the crystal resistance R_e is small, then it can be shown (see Appendix F) that the step-up ratio of the tank circuit is

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} \doteq \frac{X_1 + X_2}{X_2} \tag{7-28}$$

with voltages e_1 and e_2 in phase. (For this to be true, the crystal is

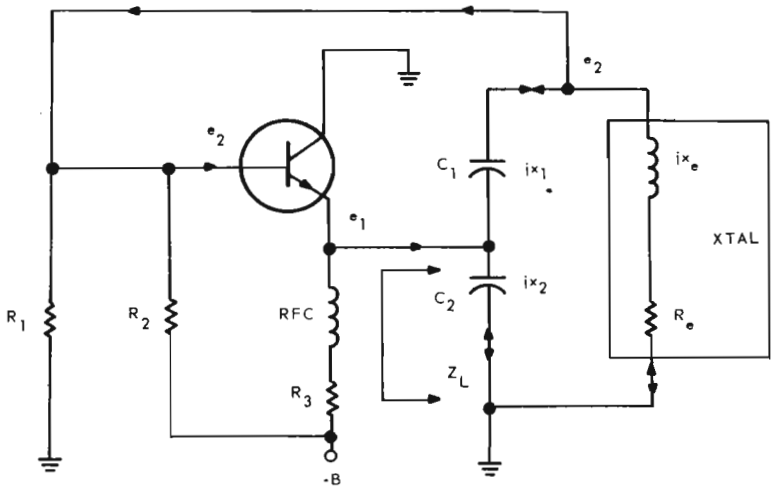


Figure 7-11. Colpitts oscillator: signal flow diagram.

resonant with the series combination of C_1 and C_2.) It also can be shown (see Appendix F) that the load seen by the emitter-follower is

$$Z_L \doteq \frac{X_2^2}{R_e} \tag{7-29}$$

and is purely resistive. The gain of the emitter-follower is

$$A = \left(\frac{e_1}{e_2}\right) = \frac{g_m Z_L}{1 + g_m Z_L}. \tag{7-30}$$

Since Z_L is resistive, the phase shift through the emitter-follower is zero, and the phase shift of the entire loop is zero. Oscillation then will take place if the loop gain exceeds unity. This is true if

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} \; A \geqslant 1. \tag{7-31}$$

Substituting for A and e_2/e_1 gives

$$\left(\frac{g_m Z_L}{1 + g_m Z_L}\right)\left(\frac{X_1 + X_2}{X_2}\right) \geqslant 1 \tag{7-32}$$

Then substituting for Z_L gives

$$\left[\frac{g_m X_2^2/R_e}{1+g_m X_2^2/R_e}\right]\left(\frac{X_1+X_2}{X_2}\right) \geqslant 1. \tag{7-33}$$

But simplifying this gives

$$g_m X_1 X_2 \geqslant R_e, \tag{7-34}$$

which is the same equation obtained for the Pierce oscillator, as might be expected. Also, since the crystal must be resonant with the series combination of C_1 and C_2, the crystal reactance can be calculated using the equation $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$, where X_e is the crystal reactance.

This analysis is quite limited by the assumptions made. When any one of them is not satisfied, equations (7-11) and (7-12) developed for the Pierce oscillator may be used. Here again the linear analysis gives no information concerning output voltage or crystal drive.

In some cases, the Y-parameters of the transistor may not be known or, for other reasons, the reader may elect to use an experimental approach to designing a Colpitts oscillator. For such an approach, the following guidelines may be used: In general, C_1 and C_2 should be as large as possible but still allow the circuit to oscillate with two to three times the maximum permissible crystal resistance.* If this results in the crystal reactance X_e being smaller than that of the specified load capacity, a trimmer capacitor may be placed in series with the crystal to trim the crystal onto frequency. As in the Pierce oscillator, it is desirable to let $|X_2| \ll 1/g_{oe}$ and $|X_1| \ll 1/g_{ie}$. This minimizes the effect of transistor input and output conductances on the circuit. Best stability also occurs if C_1 and C_2 are as large as possible because they swamp out any change in the transistor capacitances. Still another effect makes it desirable to make C_1 and C_2 as large as possible in the Colpitts oscillator. Referring to Figure 7-10, it can be seen that the reactance of the crystal (or the resultant reactance of the crystal and a series trimmer) will be smaller

*This can be determined by adding resistance in series with the crystal until oscillation will not occur.

if C_1 and C_2 are large, thus minimizing the shunt effects of R_1 and R_2.

The large-signal analysis presented for the Pierce oscillator in section 7.2.2 can also be applied to the Colpitts oscillator by recognizing that if the ac ground point were moved from the collector to the emitter, the circuits would be basically the same.

Again, as in the case of the linear analysis, additional insight may be obtained from an analysis based on the Colpitts configuration itself. Such an analysis has been made in Appendix I, based on the principle of harmonic balance. This analysis also shows an effect of amplitude on the frequency of oscillation. The analysis is made using the circuit of Figure 7-12. Here the crystal is replaced by an equivalent resistance and inductance. While this substitution would not be valid for a transient analysis or an analysis based on the variation of parameters, it is nevertheless satisfactory using the principle of harmonic balance, even though differential equations are used initially. The justification for this rests on the argument that the principle of harmonic balance is a steady-state solution, and replacing the crystal reactance by its series capacitance–inductance combination would only result in a slower buildup of oscillation. One might wonder if the resultant additional filtering afforded by the series LC combination would affect the result, since harmonics could beat together to produce a fundamental component. It should be observed, however, that even with the equivalent circuit shown, the impedance of the resonant circuit is so low at the harmonic frequencies that these components have a negligible effect on the amplitude of oscillation.

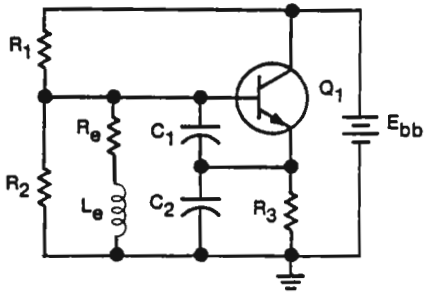


Figure 7-12. Colpitts oscillator circuit.

In the analysis, it is assumed that the biasing resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3 have a negligible effect on the ac performance. It will be found in general that the nonlinear analyses become formidable when even a few effects are considered, and therefore it is impossible to consider all the effects simultaneously. The general approach is to consider only one or two effects in a given analysis to determine how these parameters influence behavior. Other analyses are then made to determine how some of the neglected effects modify the behavior. For this analysis, it is assumed that the transistor reactances and its output impedance are negligible.

From equation (I-36) in Appendix I, we see that the amplitude of oscillation is determined by the expression:

$$X_1 X_2 g_m = R_e - \frac{X_1 (X_e + X_2)}{R_{\text{in}}} \tag{7-35}$$

where $X_1 = -1/\omega C_1$, $X_2 = -1/\omega C_2$, X_e is the crystal equivalent reactance, and g_m and R_{in} are the equivalent transconductance and input resistance at the final stabilized amplitude. The relationship between the small-signal values and the large-signal equivalent values is consistent with the nonlinear analysis discussed in section 6.4, and the ratios g_m/g_{m0} and $R_{\text{in}}/R_{\text{in0}}$ may be read from the graph of Figure 6-6. As a first approximation, the last term of equation (7-35) may be neglected and the required value of g_m determined. Then from transistor data or by using the approximation $g_{m0} = qI_e/KT = 0.04I_e$, where I_e is in milliamperes, we find the ratio g_m/g_{m0}. Then using Figure 6-6, a value of V can be determined. This value can be used to read the ratio $R_{\text{in}}/R_{\text{in0}}$. The value of R_{in} can then be calculated.

The analysis of Appendix I, equation (I-28), also shows that the frequency of oscillation must satisfy the expression:

$$X_e + X_1 \left(1 + \frac{R_e}{R_{\text{in}}}\right) + X_2 = 0 \tag{7-36}$$

where R_{in} is the equivalent input resistance at the final amplitude as defined above. From this equation, the crystal reactance X_e can be calculated (or if it is fixed, the values of X_1 and X_2 to obtain X_e can be found). The values of X_1, X_2, X_e, and R_{in} can then be substituted in equation (7-35) to obtain a corrected value of g_m if required.

The value of V can also be used to find the actual voltage across C_1, which is

$$V_1 \text{(peak ac)} = \frac{VKT}{q} \doteq 26 \text{ mV times } V.$$

Since the circulating current in the tank circuit, consisting of R_e, L_e, C_1, and C_2, is normally large compared to the base current, the ac voltage across C_2 is given by

$$V_2 = \frac{V_1 C_1}{C_2}.$$

The bias shift due to oscillation from equation (6-23) is given by

$$V_{\text{bias}} = \frac{KT}{q} \ln I_0(V)$$

and may be read from the graph of Figure 6-7.

Several typical examples of Colpitts crystal oscillators are given in Figures 7-13 and 7-14. They are included as guidelines for designing circuits of this type. For these circuits, the output was taken from the emitter through a capacitive divider. It may be convenient to take the output from another point in the circuit if a larger voltage is required and a high-impedance load exists.

7.3.1. 3- to 10-MHz Colpitts Oscillator *

Typical performance characteristics for the 3- to 10-MHz Colpitts oscillator shown in Figure 7-13 are given below.

a. Crystal: CR-18/U or similar.
b. Load capacitance: 32 pF.
c. Drive level: 2–10 mW, depending on the frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 4.4 parts in 10^8/°C at 10 MHz and 6.3 parts in 10^8/°C at 3 MHz.

*See footnote p. 66.

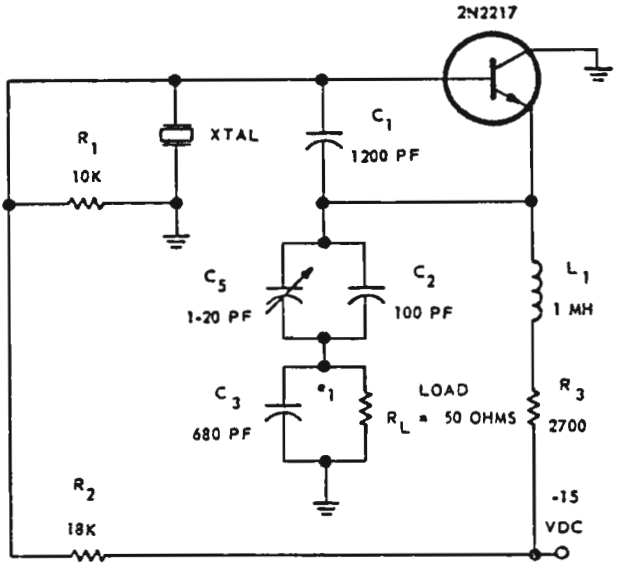


Figure 7-13. 3- to 10-MHz Colpitts oscillator: schematic diagram.

4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 1.3 parts in 10^7 at 3 MHz, 3 parts in 10^7 at 5 MHz, and 6 parts in 10^7 at 10 MHz for a 10-percent supply voltage variation.

e. Output: If $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.05 V at 10 MHz and 0.25 V at 3 MHz, depending on the crystal resistance. Distortion is about 7 percent at 10 MHz and 17 percent at 3 MHz.

f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.

g. Power input: 55 mW.

NOTE. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 3- to 10-MHz range, some adjustment of C_5 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.3.2. 10- to 20-MHz Colpitts Oscillator

Typical performance characteristics for the 10- to 20-MHz Colpitts oscillator shown in Figure 7-14 are given below.

a. Crystal: CR-18/U, CR-66/U, or similar.

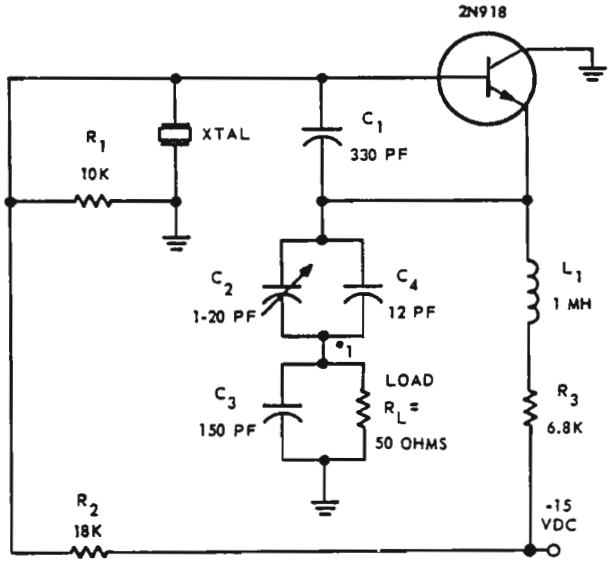


Figure 7-14. 10- to 20-MHz Colpitts oscillator: schematic diagram.

b. Load capacitance: 32 or 30 pF, respectively.
c. Drive level: 1–2 mW, depending on frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C for CR-18/U or ±0.002 percent from −55°C to +105°C for the CR-66/U.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature stability of oscillator circuitry: 4.4 parts in 10^8/°C at 10 MHz and 1.8 parts in 10^8/°C at 20 MHz.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: Approximately 1.5 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.
e. Output: For $R_L = 50\ \Omega$, $e_1 = 0.15$–0.20 V, depending on frequency and crystal resistance.
f. Permissible load: $50 \leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
g. Input power: 26 mW.

NOTE. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 10- to 20-MHz range, some adjustment of C_2 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.4. CLAPP OSCILLATOR

The Clapp oscillator is actually a Pierce oscillator with the base rather than the emitter at ac ground. If appropriate allowances are made for strays, then the Pierce oscillator equations can be used for this circuit. It may be desirable, however, to look at the Clapp oscillator as a unique circuit analyzed in its own way. This gives a better feel for the quantities involved. The most important disadvantage of the Clapp oscillator is that free-running oscillations may occur through the RF choke if resistor R_4 is too small. (See Figure 7-15.) If a fairly high supply voltage is available, R_4 can be made so large that the choke is not needed.

The Clapp oscillator can be thought of as a grounded-base amplifier stage loaded with a tank circuit. The tank has a capacitive tap from which energy is fed back to the emitter. Refer to Figure 7-16 for a signal diagram.

If we assume that the emitter base capacitance is included in C_1, that the collector-to-emitter capacitance is included in C_2, and that $R_e \ll X_e$, then the circuit can be analyzed as follows. It is assumed that the input impedance of the common-base amplifier is $1/g_m$, where g_m is the transconductance of the transistor. Also the gain of the stage

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = A \doteq g_m Z_L$$

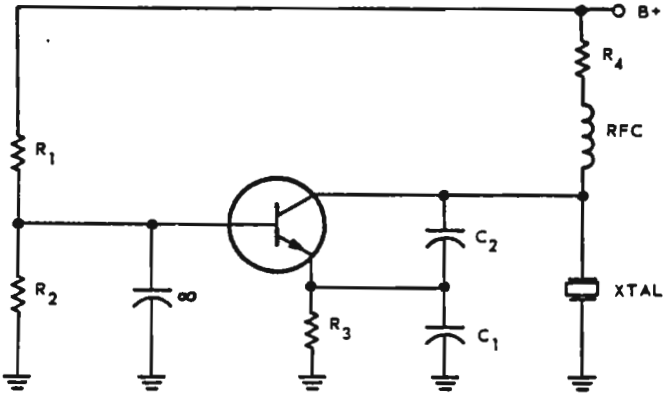


Figure 7-15. Clapp crystal oscillator: schematic diagram.

where Z_L is the collector load impedance. The voltage ratio of the tapped tank circuit is given approximately (see Appendix D) by

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{X_1}{X_1 + X_2}. \tag{7-38}$$

The phase angle between the voltages is very small; for practical purposes, the voltages e_1 and e_2 are in phase. The phase shift through the amplifier is determined by the phase angle of Z_L. It can be shown (see Appendix D) that Z_L, the impedance presented to the collector by the tank when the capacitive tap is loaded by the transistor input impedance $1/g_m$, is given by

$$Z_L \doteq \frac{(X_1 + X_2)^2}{R_e + g_m X_1^2} \tag{7-39}$$

This expression is derived under the condition that $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$. Here, again, the phase angle is very small and, for this discussion, will be neglected. With a resistive load, then, the phase shift through the amplifier is zero; therefore, the phase shift through the entire loop is zero, fulfilling the phase shift requirements. The gain requirement is that the quantity $(e_2/e_1)A \geqslant 1$. The gain of the transistor is

$$A = g_m Z_L = \frac{g_m (X_1 + X_2)^2}{R_e + g_m X_1^2} \tag{7-40}$$

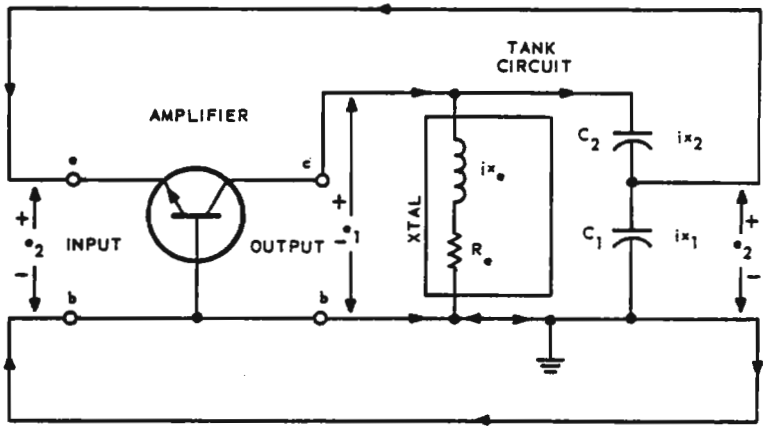


Figure 7-16. Clapp crystal oscillator: signal flow diagram.

and

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{X_1}{X_1 + X_2}.$$

Substituting these,

$$\left(\frac{X_1}{X_1 + X_2} \right) \left[\frac{g_m (X_1 + X_2)^2}{R_e + g_m X_1^2} \right] \geqslant 1. \qquad (7\text{-}41)$$

This fortunately simplifies to the equation derived for the Pierce oscillator: $g_m X_1 X_2 \geqslant R_e$. Also, it has been shown that the phase shift requirements will be fulfilled if $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$.

This analysis is quite limited by the assumptions made. When any one of them is not satisfied, equations (7-11) and (7-12) developed for the Pierce oscillator may be used.

Here again the linear analysis gives no information concerning output voltage or crystal drive. Also, in some cases the Y-parameters of the transistor may not be known, and experimental design techniques must be used.

In general, C_1 and C_2 should be as large as possible but still allow the circuit to oscillate with two to three times the maximum permissible crystal resistance.* If this results in the crystal reactance X_e being smaller than that required for the specified load capacitance, a trimmer capacitor may be placed in series with the crystal. Whether or not a series capacitor is used, it may be desirable to provide some variable reactive element to trim the crystal onto frequency.

It should be noted that when C_1 and C_2 are large, the sum $X_1 + X_2$ is small, making the RF choke in series with R_4 unnecessary under some conditions.

A load can be connected to the Clapp oscillator in any one of several places. Maximum voltage can be obtained on the collector. Any impedance connected to this point must be high. A lower impedance and moderate voltages can be found at the emitter. A very low impedance output can be obtained by inserting a capacitor equal to approximately five times the value of C_1 between C_1 and

*This can be determined by adding resistance in series with the crystal until oscillation will not occur.

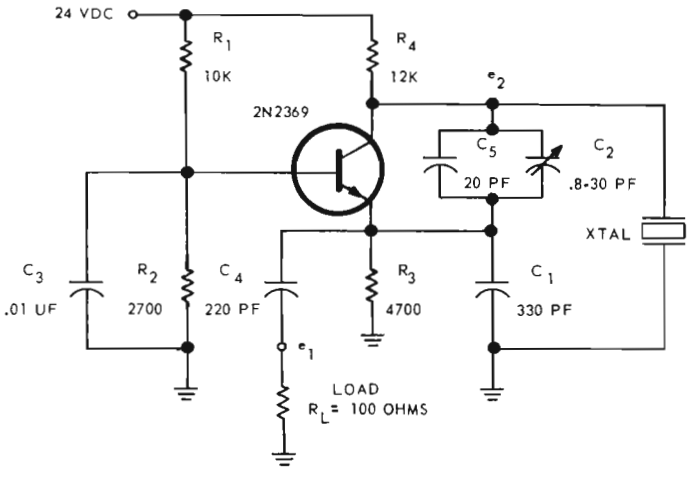


Figure 7-17. 3- to 20-MHz Clapp oscillator: schematic diagram.

ground. The output then is taken from the connection of C_1 and the added capacitor.

The schematic diagram of a practical Clapp oscillator is given in Figure 7-17.*

7.4.1. 3- to 20-MHz Clapp Oscillator Circuit

a. Crystal: CR-18/U, CR-66/U, or similar.
b. Load capacitance: 32 or 30 pF, respectively.
c. Crystal drive level: 1–5 mW, depending on frequency and crystal resistance.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C for CR-18/U or ±0.002 percent from −55°C to +105°C for CR-66/U.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: 5 parts in 10^6/month to several parts in 10^8/month, depending on crystal. See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature coefficient of oscillator: 3 parts in 10^8/°C at 3 MHz, 7 parts in 10^9 at 5 MHz, and 2.4 parts in 10^8 at 20 MHz.
   4. Voltage coefficient: 2 parts in 10^6 at 3 MHz, 9 parts in 10^7

*See footnote p. 66.

at 5 MHz, 4 parts in 10^7 at 10 MHz, and 6 parts in 10^7 at 20 MHz for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.

e. Output conditions: With $R_L = 100\ \Omega$, $e_1 \doteq 0.15$–0.3 V, depending on frequency and crystal resistance. Distortion (at 5 MHz) = 15 percent. The output may be taken from the collector with a very high-impedance load. Voltage $e_2 \doteq 3$–7 V, depending on frequency and crystal resistance. The output change over the temperature range from $-55°C$ to $+100°C$ is approximately 5 percent.
f. Permissible load: $100 \leqslant R_L < \infty$.
g. Input power: 65 mW.

NOTE 1. The oscillator can be operated from a 15-V supply if several changes are made. The resistor R_4 is decreased to 5.6 kΩ, and a 500-μH choke is added in series with it. The choke is necessary to prevent unduly loading the collector circuit. The resistor in series with the choke is necessary to prevent the oscillator from free-running through the choke instead of oscillating through the crystal. The emitter resistor R_e is reduced to 2.7 kΩ.

NOTE 2. Although the circuit will oscillate with any standard crystal in the 3- to 20-MHz range, some adjustment of C_2 is necessary over the frequency range to put crystals exactly on frequency.

7.5. GROUNDED-BASE OSCILLATOR

The basic circuit of the grounded-base crystal oscillator is shown in Figure 7-18.

This circuit can be used from several megahertz to above 150 MHz. It is most commonly used in the range from 20 to 100 MHz. The circuit is capable of delivering high output power, has medium frequency stability, and is about average in difficulty to design. It is basically a zero phase shift oscillator. This makes it undesirable for use with a complicated crystal switch in the region above 75 MHz where lagging phase shift problems become severe.

Basically, the grounded-base oscillator circuit works as follows: The voltage on the emitter of the transistor is amplified and appears

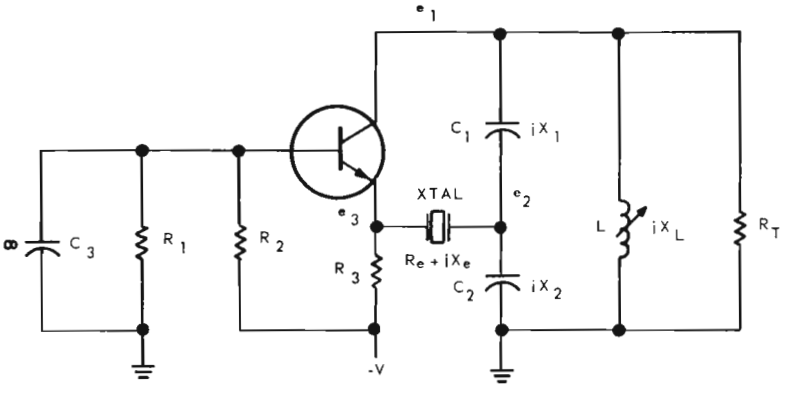


Figure 7-18. Grounded-base oscillator: schematic diagram.

on the collector as

$$e_1 = e_3 y_{fb} Z_t \tag{7-42}$$

where Z_t is the impedance presented to the collector by the tank. For most oscillators, the tank is tuned to resonance and thus appears resistive. The voltage e_1 then lags e_3 by the angle of the forward transfer admittance of the transistor, which at lower frequencies is small.

A small amount of phase shift also is caused by the capacitive tap on the tank circuit. This is a leading phase shift, however, and tends to compensate for the phase lag in the transistor. If the capacitor C_2 is fairly large, this phase shift is negligible and the voltage on the tap is given approximately by

$$e_2 = e_1 \left(\frac{C_1}{C_1 + C_2} \right) = -e_1 \left(\frac{X_2}{X_L} \right). \tag{7-43}$$

The grounded-base input impedance of the transistor normally is somewhat inductive so that leading phase shift also occurs between the tap on the tank e_2 and the emitter. The emitter voltage e_3 is related to e_2 by the expression

$$e_3 = \left(\frac{e_2}{1 + Z_e y_{ib}} \right) \tag{7-44}$$

where Z_e is the crystal impedance and y_{ib} is the transistor input

admittance. If the crystal is at series resonance, and if the transistor input admittance is only slightly inductive, then the expression simplifies to

$$e_3 \doteq e_2 \left(\frac{R_{\text{in}}}{R_{\text{in}} + R_e} \right) \tag{7-45}$$

where R_{in} is the input resistance of the transistor and R_e is the crystal resistance. The phase shift that does occur tends to compensate for the phase lag in the transistor. For oscillation to take place, all three of the phase shifts must add up to zero, and the loop gain must equal or exceed unity.

The equations which must be satisfied for these conditions to occur are derived in Appendix C and are presented here as equations (7-46) and (7-47).

$$g_{fb} = \frac{1}{R_T} \left(\frac{X_L}{X_2} \right) \left[\frac{R_e + R_{\text{in}}}{R_{\text{in}}} \right] + \frac{1}{R_{\text{in}}} \left(\frac{X_2}{X_L} \right) + b_{ib} \left(\frac{X_1}{R_T} \right) - b_{ib} \left(\frac{X_L}{X_2} \right) \left(\frac{X_e}{R_T} \right) \tag{7-46}$$

$$X_e = b_{fb} R_T R_{\text{in}} \left(\frac{X_2}{X_L} \right) + X_1 \left(\frac{X_2}{X_L} \right) - b_{ib} R_{\text{in}} \left[R_e + R_T \left(\frac{X_2}{X_L} \right)^2 \right] \tag{7-47}$$

where $X_1 = -1/\omega C_1$, $X_2 = -1/\omega C_2$, $X_L = \omega L$, $R_{\text{in}} = 1/g_{ib}$, and R_T is the total resistance shunting the tank circuit ($R_T \doteq R_L$). (For definitions of the g and b transistor parameters, refer to Chapter 6.

In deriving these equations, the following assumptions were made:

a. The reverse transfer admittance of the transistor, y_{rb}, is negligible.
b. The transistor output admittance, y_{ob}, is either negligible or lumped in with R_T and L.
c. The tank components $X_1 + X_2 + X_L = 0$. (This is approximately resonance.)

Even with these assumptions, the equations appear formidable but are nevertheless quite useful. If equation (7-46) is minimized for

transistor gain, it will be found that minimum g_{fb} is required when

$$\frac{X_L}{X_2} = -\left(\frac{R_T}{R_e + R_{in}}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{7-48}$$

This assumes that the crystal is operated at series resonance, $X_e = 0$. The minimum g_{fb} is then given by

$$g_{fb(min)} = -\frac{2}{R_{in}}\left(\frac{R_e + R_{in}}{R_T}\right)^{1/2} + b_{ib}\left(\frac{X_1}{R_T}\right). \tag{7-49}$$

For a first approximation, it may be desirable to neglect the reactive component b_{ib} of the transistor input impedance in the gain equation so that

$$g_{fb(min)} \doteq -\frac{2}{R_{in}}\left(\frac{R_e + R_{in}}{R_T}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{7-50}$$

If

$$\left(\frac{b_{ib}}{g_{fb}}\right)\left(\frac{X_1}{R_T}\right) << 1 \tag{7-51}$$

then the error introduced by this assumption is negligible, as is often the case.

If we require the crystal to operate at series resonance ($X_e = 0$), then we can design the oscillator circuit as follows by the manipulation of equations (7-47), (7-48), and (7-50).

Step 1. Calculate R_T using g_{fb} approximately one-third the actual g_{fb} of the transistor. This gives a loop gain of 3 to ensure saturation:

$$R_T = \frac{4(R_e + R_{in})}{(R_{in}\, g_{fb})^2}. \tag{7-52}$$

Step 2. Calculate (X_L/X_2) using the equation,

$$\frac{X_L}{X_2} = -\left(\frac{R_T}{R_e + R_{in}}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{7-53}$$

Note that

$$\frac{C_2}{C_1} = -\left(\frac{X_L}{X_2} + 1\right).$$

Step 3. Calculate X_1 (using b_{fb} approximately one-third the actual b_{fb} if one-third the actual g_{fb} was used in step 1):

$$X_1 = \frac{b_{ib}}{g_{ib}}\left[R_e\left(\frac{X_L}{X_2}\right) + R_T\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right)\right] - \frac{b_{fb}}{g_{ib}}R_T. \tag{7-54}$$

This equation must be used with judgment. If $g_{fb} < b_{fb}$ and R_T is fairly large, the calculated value of X_1 will be very large (small C_1). This results because of the assumption $X_1 + X_2 + X_L = 0$. If the transistor phase lag is large, it may require that a considerable phase shift be obtained in C_2. This causes the tank to look capacitive if $X_1 + X_2 + X_L = 0$, producing even more lagging phase shift and requiring C_1 to be extremely small. It may be better to keep C_1 a little larger and tune the tank to actual resonance (so that Z_T is real).

At low frequencies, the calculated value of X_1 may come out very small (C_1 extremely large) or negative. This results it the phase shift at the transistor input is sufficient to cancel the phase lag through the transistor so that no phase shift is required from the capacitive tap. If this occurs, it may be better to let

$$X_1 = \frac{R_e + R_{\text{in}}}{\text{approximately 5 or 10}}\left[\frac{X_L}{X_2} + 1\right] \tag{7-55}$$

and tune the tank slightly capacitive.

Step 4. Calculate X_2 by

$$X_2 = -\frac{X_1}{(X_L/X_2) + 1}. \tag{7-56}$$

Step 5. Calculate X_L by

$$X_L = -(X_1 + X_2). \tag{7-57}$$

If the parameters of the transistor are accurately known, then the application of equations (7-52) to (7-57) may lead to values for C_1, C_2, L, and R_T close to the final values in the optimized circuit. Since the equations assume linearity, they give no information concerning crystal drive level or output power. They predict starting conditions only. The power gain approach described in Chapter 3 may be useful when designing a grounded-base oscillator. If it is used, the transformation ratio $R_{fb}/(R_{\text{in}} + R_e)$, should be set equal to the transforma-

tion ratio of the tank circuit which is given by $[(C_1 + C_2)/C_1]^2$. This can be solved for the ratio

$$\frac{C_2}{C_1} = \left(\frac{R_{fb}}{R_{in} + R_e}\right)^{1/2} - 1. \tag{7-58}$$

Regardless of which design approach is used, it will be necessary in general to optimize the circuit experimentally. Therefore, a general discussion for the experimental approach is given here.

Basically, there are three considerations which must be kept in mind in designing a grounded-base oscillator. First, the impedance transformation $[(C_2/C_1) + 1]^2$, should be approximately equal to the ratio $R_T/(R_{in} + R_e)$ for optimum gain conditions. R_{in} is the input resistance of the transistor and is generally quite low (in the range from 20 to 100 Ω). R_e is the crystal resistance and in the VHF range usually falls between 20 and 60 Ω. R_T is the collector load resulting from the load resistor and the tank circuit. If high output is required, it is desirable to make the ratio C_2/C_1 fairly large. This reduces the crystal dissipation for a given output voltage. It also reduces the stability; therefore, if the additional output power is not required and crystal dissipation is excessive, the emitter current should be reduced. If the emitter current is high and the ratio of C_2/C_1 is very large, outputs in excess of 50 mW can be obtained. However, outputs below 5 mW are more common for stable oscillators.

The second consideration in designing a grounded-base oscillator is the adjustment of C_1 and C_2. They should be adjusted so that the crystal is on frequency when the tank is tuned for maximum output (resonance). If there is too much phase lag in the transistor, the crystal will operate below series resonance. This usually can be corrected by decreasing C_1 and C_2 (the ratio C_2/C_1 may remain unchanged). The amount of phase shift that can be compensated for in this manner is somewhat limited. For this reason, the grounded-base oscillator is not desirable for use with complicated crystal switches above about 75 MHz. On occasions it may be desirable to insert a capacitor in series with the crystal to get the frequency up to series resonance.

A third consideration in designing a grounded-base oscillator is preventing unwanted oscillations. They may occur simultaneously with the crystal oscillation or they may be sufficiently severe to kill the crystal-controlled oscillation altogether. There are generally two types of free-running oscillation which may occur in the grounded-

base oscillator. The first is oscillation through the shunt capacitance C_0 of the crystal rather than through the motional arm of the crystal. This usually can be prevented by resonating out C_0 by the addition of an inductor across the crystal, as shown in Figure 7-20 (see section 7.5.2 below). A second source of instability is the internal feedback of the transistor, which may cause parasitic oscillations. (Refer to Chapter 6.) These oscillations usually can be detected by a jump in the output voltage as the oscillator is tuned. The best remedy for such oscillations is to use a fairly small resistance value for R_T. Only if the actual load is resistive over a wide frequency range can resistor R_T be eliminated. The importance of using some real resistance to load the tank for stabilization cannot be overemphasized. In some cases, it may be desirable to load the emitter for stabilization also, as is done on the oscillator of Figure 7-19.

Some transistors have a considerably greater tendency than others to develop parasitic oscillations. Therefore, if the problem persists, it may be advantageous to try several other transistor types.

The grounded-base oscillator is sometimes used with an inductive tap rather than a capacitive tap for low-frequency crystals. This may make it easier to get the crystal down to its series resonant frequency. Adding a capacitor from emitter to ground also may be helpful in accomplishing this. Generally, the inductive tap should not be used above 30 MHz because it aggravates the lagging phase shift problem.

Several practical grounded-base oscillator circuits are presented in Figures 7-19 through 7-22.*

7.5.1. 25-MHz Grounded-Base Oscillator

L = 0.65–1.5 μH, 14 turns of #28 wire close-wound on 0.211-inch-o.d. coil form. Slug: Carbonyl W, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch long.

C_1 has a negative temperature coefficient of 200 ppm/°C to compensate for temperature changes in the oscillator circuitry.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-67/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Nominally 2 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.0025 percent from -55°C to +105°C.

*See footnote p. 66.

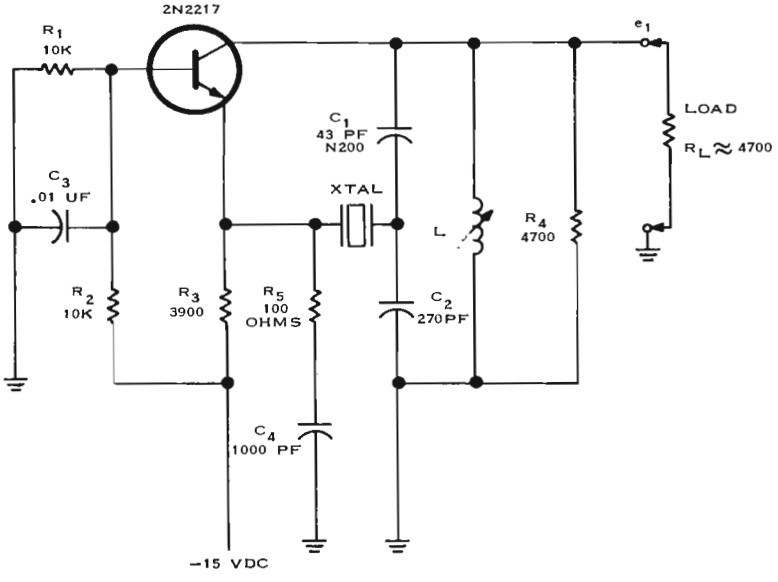


Figure 7-19. 25-MHz grounded-base oscillator: schematic diagram.

2. Aging rate of crystal: ±0.0005 percent/month to several parts in 10^8/month, depending on crystal. See section 5.7.
3. Temperature coefficient of oscillator circuitry: 1 part in 10^8/°C.
4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 7 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.

e. Permissible load: 4.7 kΩ $\leqslant R_L < \infty$.

f. Output: e_1 is approximately 2 V for R_L = 4.7 kΩ. Change in output with temperature is approximately 3 percent from -55°C to +100°C. A low impedance output may be obtained by using a capacitive divider in place of C_2.

NOTE. R_4 is used for stabilization and should not be included in the load.

g. Power input: 40 mW.

7.5.2. 50-MHz Grounded-Base Oscillator

L_1 = 0.92–2.1 μH, 15 turns #28 wire close-wound on 0.211-inch-o.d. coil form. Slug: Carbonyl W, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch long.

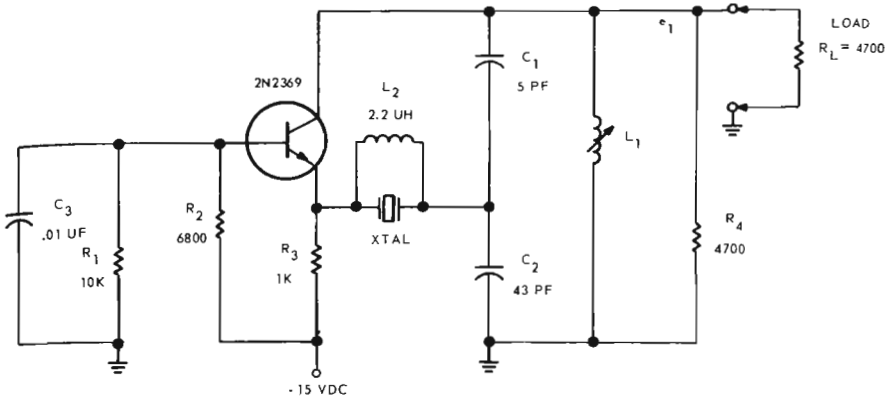


Figure 7-20. 50-MHz grounded-base oscillator: schematic diagram.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-67/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Nominally 2 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.0025 percent from -55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature coefficient of oscillator circuitry: 1 part in 10^8/°C.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 3 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.
e. Permissible load: 4.7 kΩ $\leqslant R_L < \infty$.
f. Output: e_1 is approximately 7 V for a load of 4.7 kΩ. Change in output with temperature is approximately 5 percent from -55°C to +100°C. A low impedance output may be obtained by using a capacitive divider in place of C_2. Distortion is approximately 5 percent.

NOTE. R_4 is used for stabilization and should not be included in the load.

g. Power input: 85 mW.

NOTE. L_2 is chosen to be antiresonant with the C_0 of the crystal and any stray capacitance in parallel with it.

7.5.3. 75-MHz Grounded-Base Oscillator

L_1 = 0.27–0.52 μH, 7 turns #28 wire close-wound on 0.211-inch-o.d. coil form. Slug: Carbonyl E, $\frac{5}{16}$ inch long.

L_2 = This inductance is chosen to be antiresonant with the C_0 of the crystal and any stray capacity in parallel with it.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-56A/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Approximately 0.5 mW.
d. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.
   2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
   3. Temperature coefficient of oscillator circuitry: 1 part in 10^8/°C.
   4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 8 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent change in supply voltage.
e. Permissible load: 3.3 kΩ $\leqslant R_L \leqslant \infty$.
f. Output: e_1 is approximately 2 volts for a load of 3.3 kΩ. Change in output with temperature is approximately 5 percent from −55 to +100°C. A low impedance output may be obtained by using a capacitive divider in place of C_2. Distortion is approximately 10 percent.

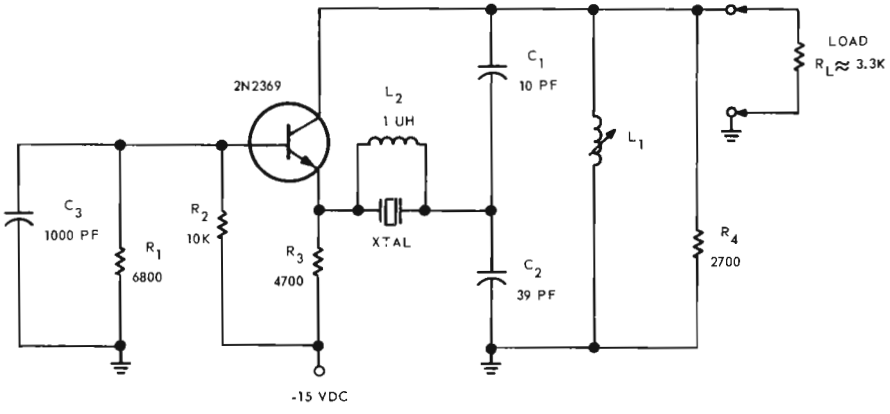


Figure 7-21. 75-MHz grounded-base oscillator: schematic diagram.

NOTE. R_4 is used for stabilization and should not be included in the load.

g. Power input: 40 mW.

7.5.4. 110-MHz Grounded-Base Oscillator and Doubler

L_1 = 0.20–0.40 μH, 7 turns #26 wire close-wound on 0.162-inch-o.d. coil form. Slug: Carbonyl SF, $\frac{3}{8}$ inch long.

L_2 is chosen to be antiresonant with the C_0 of the crystal and any stray capacitance in parallel with it.

L_3, C_4: Omit if transistors with a higher f_t are used.

L_4: 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ turns #18 wire, $\frac{3}{16}$-inch-i.d., $\frac{9}{64}$ inch long.

C_1 has a negative temperature coefficient of 470 ppm/°C to compensate for temperature changes in the inductor, L_1 and in the remaining oscillator circuitry.

a. Crystal: Similar to CR-56A/U.
b. Load capacitance: Series resonance.
c. Drive level: Nominally 2 mW.
d. Spurious responses: 3 : 1 or 120 Ω, whichever is greater.
e. Pin-to-pin capacitance: 4.5 pF maximum.
f. Factors affecting frequency stability are as follows:
   1. Temperature coefficient of crystal: ±0.005 percent from −55°C to +105°C.

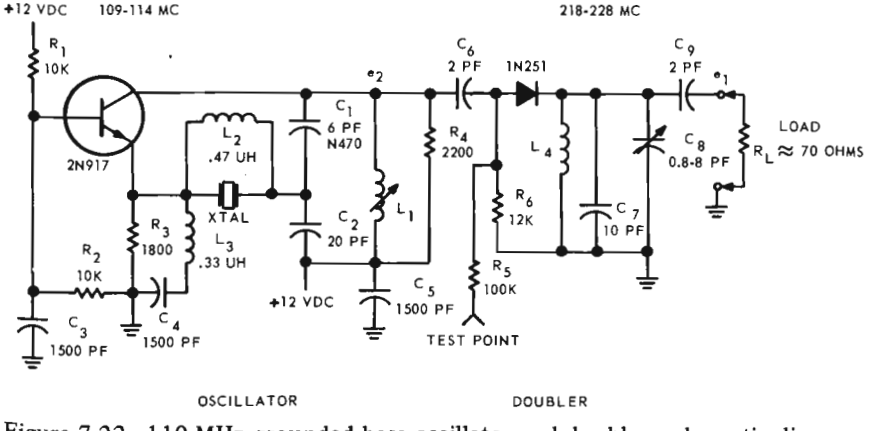


Figure 7-22. 110-MHz grounded-base oscillator and doubler: schematic diagram.

2. Aging rate of crystal: See section 5.7.
3. Temperature coefficient of oscillator circuitry: 2 parts in 10^8/°C.
4. Voltage coefficient of oscillator: 8 parts in 10^7 for a 10-percent supply in voltage change.

g. Output: For $R_L = 70\ \Omega$, e_1 is approximately 0.15–0.25 V at 220 MHz.

7.6. GATE OSCILLATORS

The use of logic gates in crystal oscillators is common in systems where the oscillator output must drive digital hardware. These oscillators are generally of lesser stability than those discussed previously in this chapter; however, they are very useful and a large variety of such oscillators have been used. Nearly all types of gate oscillators are prone to problems with respect to free running and spurious oscillations, and it is recommended that the oscillators be thoroughly tested in accordance with the procedures outlined in the following chapter prior to committing them to production. Several types of gate oscillators which have been found to work satisfactorily in some applications are discussed in the following paragraphs.

7.6.1. Single-Gate Oscillators

The single-gate oscillators, particularly in the lower frequency range using CMOS gates, have proven to be satisfactory in many applications. The frequency stability is generally not as good as that obtained with the transistor oscillators discussed earlier such as the Pierce and Colpitts circuits. As a result, gate oscillators are usually not used in temperature-compensated applications or oven frequency standards. When a frequency stability degradation of several parts per million from that of the crystal can be tolerated, the use of a single-gate oscillator is often a good choice.

A basic low-frequency gate oscillator circuit is shown in Figure 7-23 and consists of the gate *U1* followed by a resistance R_2 to raise the effective output impedance of the gate. This combination of the gate and resistor may be thought of as replacing the transistor in a Pierce oscillator. Refer to Figure 7-1.

The gate provides the necessary gain and produces a phase shift of 180 degrees. The π-network, consisting of C_1, C_2, and the crystal, produces an additional 180 degrees of phase shift, thus satisfying the 360-degree phase shift requirements for oscillation.

The crystal looks inductive and is resonant with capacitors C_1 and C_2. The frequency of oscillation automatically adjusts itself so that this is true; therefore, the combination of the crystal and C_1 alone has a net inductive reactance at the operating frequency.

Current I_1 lags voltage e_2 by 90 degrees. Voltage e_1 being developed across capacitor C_1 lags current I_1 by 90 degrees, making it 180 degrees behind voltage e_2. Since the combination of C_1 and the crystal is resonant with C_2, the gate, through R_2, sees a resistive load.

This explanation is valid only at low frequencies where the gate produces no phase shift, and if the input impedance of the gate is negligible compared to the output impedance of the π network. In the more usual case some phase compensation for these effects is necessary and occurs at the input of the π network due to the presence of R_2 which then looks into a somewhat reactive load. The capacitors C_1 and C_2 are then not exactly resonant with the crystal. In some gate oscillators the input impedance of the gate significantly loads the π network which also reduces the maximum resistance that the circuit can accommodate. At low frequencies, the single gate oscillator can usually be designed to accept the maximum crystal resistance with no difficulty. A more difficult aspect of the design seems to be the elimination of spurious and relaxation type oscilla-

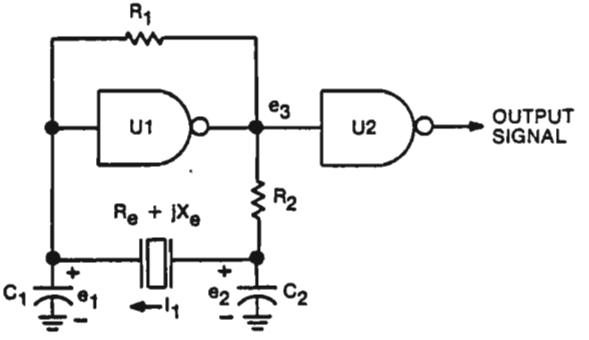


Figure 7-23. Basic low-frequency gate oscillator.

tion. In some cases during the design the circuit may actually fail to oscillate on the crystal frequency but produce relaxation type oscillation at some other frequency. In other cases the circuit will oscillate on the crystal frequency with an envelope at another frequency appearing on the signal. In other cases, and this is perhaps the most evasive, the circuit will operate satisfactorily with a typical crystal but will cause spurious oscillations with a high resistance crystal or if the crystal is removed. These conditions should be evaluated prior to completing the design and if not permissible in a particular application they must be eliminated.

It is often rather difficult to completely eliminate the tendency for these free running oscillations and a great deal of component value modification may be necessary, as well as layout changes and improvements in the supply voltage bypassing. It has been found that in some cases that the use of a second gate for load isolation, as shown in Figure 7-23 may result in relaxation oscillation tendencies and the choice of which gate on the chip is used may have an impact on the performance.

Even though the gate oscillators are plagued with these spurious tendencies they are widely used and have proven to be satisfactory in many applications. The designer must be aware of the potential problems and even though the circuits appear simple and straight forward to design, the design effort should not be terminated when the circuit first starts to oscillate.

The circuit can be analyzed analytically by substituting the Y-parameters of the gate with the resistor R_2 on its output into the equations for the Pierce oscillator given in section 7.2.

In section 7.2 it is shown that for oscillation to take place,

$$g_{fe}X_1X_2 \geqslant R_e + K_1 \tag{7-59}$$

and

$$X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0 + K_2, \tag{7-60}$$

where K_1 and K_2 are second-order corrections given by:

$$K_1 = -X_1(X_2 + X_e)g_{ie} - X_2(X_1 + X_e)g_{oe} - R_eX_1X_2(g_{ie}g_{oe} + b_{fe}b_{re}) - b_{re}g_{fe}X_1X_2X_e \tag{7-61}$$

and

$$K_2 = b_{fe}X_1X_2 + X_1X_2X_eg_{ie}g_{oe} - R_e(X_1g_{ie} + X_2g_{oe}) + b_{re}X_1X_2 + b_{re}b_{fe}X_1X_2X_e - b_{re}g_{fe}X_1X_2R_e. \quad (7\text{-}62)$$

Assuming that the Y-parameters of the gate are known, we can determine the Y-parameters of the combination of the gate and a series output impedance Z. (Refer to Figure 7-24.)

We find that

$$y_i = y_{11} - \frac{y_{12}y_{21}Z}{1 + y_{22}Z}, \quad (7\text{-}63)$$

$$y_r = y_{12} - \frac{y_{12}y_{22}Z}{1 + y_{22}Z}, \quad (7\text{-}64)$$

$$y_f = \frac{y_{21}}{1 + y_{22}Z}, \quad (7\text{-}65)$$

and

$$y_o = \frac{y_{22}}{1 + y_{22}Z}. \quad (7\text{-}66)$$

If the reverse transfer admittance is negligible and $y_{22}Z = y_{22}R_2 >> 1$, then equations (7-63) through (7-66) simplify to

$$y_i = y_{11} \quad (7\text{-}67)$$

$$y_r = 0 \quad (7\text{-}68)$$

$$y_f = \frac{y_{21}}{y_{22}R_2} \quad (7\text{-}69)$$

$$y_o = \frac{1}{R_2} \quad (7\text{-}70)$$

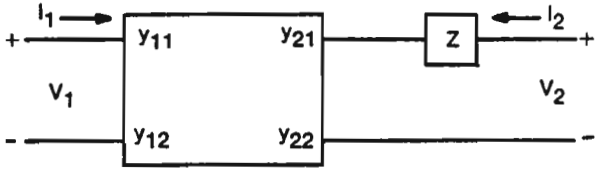


Figure 7-24. Gate with external output impedance.

We note also that the open-loop gain of a two-port is given by

$$A = -\frac{y_f}{y_o} \doteq -\frac{y_{21}}{y_{22}}; \tag{7-71}$$

hence $y_f \doteq -A/R_2$. The gain of a typical CMOS gate is on the order of 20. The values used for R_2 may vary from perhaps 300 kΩ at 30 kHz to 10 kΩ at 300 kHz. The value of R_1 (Figure 7-23) is usually chosen in the 10- to 20-MΩ range to bias the gate in its active region. Circuit values for a 200 kHz oscillator constructed by the author are listed in Table 7-2.

Table 7-2. Circuit Values for Low-Frequency Gate Oscillator.*

Frequency (kHz)	Gate type	R_1 (MΩ)	R_2 (kΩ)	C_1 (pF)	C_2 (pF)
200.0	4049	22	12	120	24

*See footnote p. 66.

The 200-kHz circuit uses a 20-pF crystal. The voltage coefficient for this circuit was in the order of 3 pp 10^7 per percent of supply voltage change. The gate pulls the frequency approximately 7 pp 10^8/°C. Power supply current including the buffer is 1.7 mA from a 5-V supply.

At higher frequencies, above approximately 1 MHz, the circuit of Figure 7-23 is not entirely satisfactory because of lagging phase shift in the gate, and it is necessary to replace resistor R_2 with a capacitor C_3, as shown in Figure 7-25. Equations (7-59) and (7-60) may still be used to analyze the circuit; however, equations (7-63) through (7-66) should be used to determine the Y-parameters of the gate with capacitor C_3 on the output. Z in this case is $-j/\omega C_3$. It should be noted that in the derivation of the equations for the Pierce oscillator, it was assumed that the input and output susceptances of the transistor were lumped into C_1 and C_2 so that b_{ie} and b_{oe} do not appear in the equations for oscillation. Here also b_{ie}/ω should be added to C_1; b_{oe}/ω to C_2.

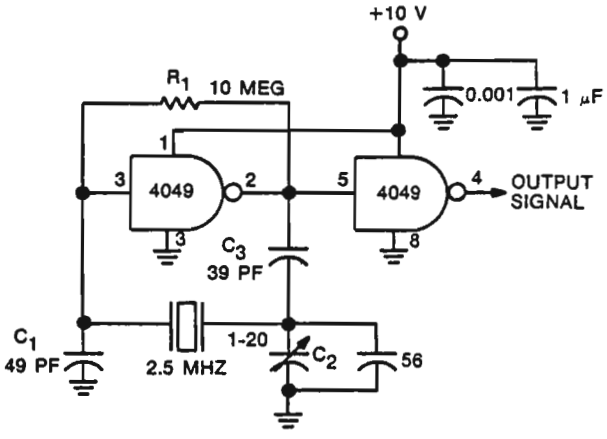


Figure 7-25. 2.5-MHz gate oscillator.

The circuit shown in Figure 7-25 uses a 32-pF parallel resonant crystal.

The voltage coefficient of the oscillator is on the order of 6 parts in 10^8/percent of supply voltage change. The voltage coefficient is somewhat dependent on the value of C_3 which should not be made smaller than perhaps 20 pF. The current drawn by the circuit is 6.5 mA from a 10-V supply or 1.5 mA from 6 V dc. The voltage at the gate output is 10 V peak to peak for 10 V supply and 6–10 V peak to peak at the gate input, depending on the crystal resistance. The gate pulls the frequency approximately 5 parts in 10^8/°C.*

For frequencies higher than a few MHz, it is necessary to use TTL gates for satisfactory operation. Unfortunately the large resistor R_1 is not adequate to bias a TTL gate into the active region. Low values of R_1 produce a considerable signal feedback and reduce the gain to an unacceptable level. The arrangement shown in Figure 7-26 is reasonably acceptable, however, there may be some tendency for free running and relaxation oscillation, which is a function of the gate and the circuit layout. The designer should particularly watch for these if he elects to use this type of circuit.

For the circuit of Figure 7-26, the gate pulls the frequency of the crystal less than 1 ppm over the temperature range from -40°C–

*See footnote p. 66.

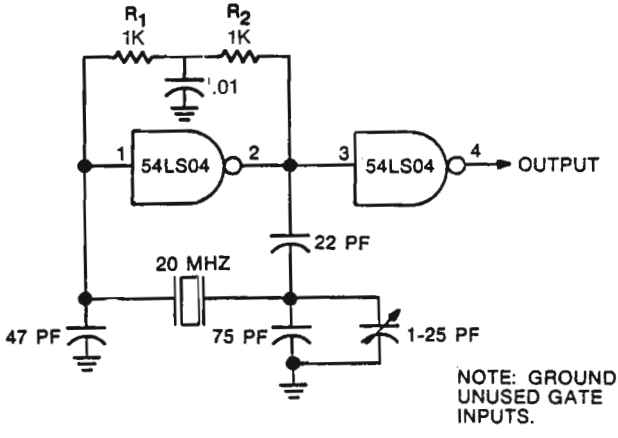


Figure 7-26. 20-MHz gate oscillator.

+65°C. This should be added to the basic crystal frequency tolerance, which is usually 25–50 ppm, depending on the crystal used.

The voltage coefficient was found to be 2–10 parts in 10^7 for a 20-percent supply voltage change.*

If the circuit is used at lower frequencies, C_1, C_2, and C_3 should be increased to ensure operation on the fundamental mode of the crystal. A series capacitor can then be used with the crystal to tune it to frequency. Since this circuit is quite prone to free-running oscillation, particularly with small values of C_1, it should be thoroughly tested with maximum-resistance crystals and limit-of-tolerance parts.

7.6.2. Multiple-Gate Oscillators

Multiple-gate oscillators, usually using two gates, are less stable than single-gate oscillators and are also prone to oscillation on the wrong mode if improperly designed. They have nevertheless been widely used, perhaps because of their (theoretically, at least) minimum number of external components. A dual-gate oscillator which has been found to work satisfactorily in some applications (see Figure 7-27) uses a series resonant crystal. It can be used up to about 20 MHz with TTL gates. In many applications this oscillator has been used without the series resonant circuit consisting of L_1 and C_2 between the two gates. The inductor L_1 is simply omitted and C_2 is replaced by a bypass capacitor. The series resonant circuit contributes nothing at

*See footnote p. 66.

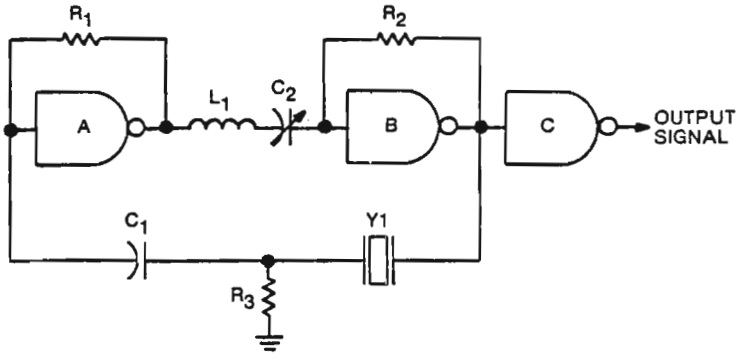


Figure 7-27. Basic dual-gate oscillator circuit.

the desired frequency of oscillation; rather, it provides protection against oscillation on the wrong mode. In some applications, particularly at low frequencies, R_3 and C_1 have been successfully omitted as well.

The two gates, *U-A* and *U-B*, are biased into the active region by resistors R_1 and R_2 to provide an amplifier with a gain A at a phase angle of approximately 360 degrees.

The feedback network is composed of the crystal, represented by an impedance $(R_e + jX_e)$, R_3, and C_1. At low frequencies the amplifier presents no phase shift, and C_1 is not required to correct for lagging phase shift in the gates. R_3 may be used to stabilize the input impedance of *U-A* and generally to present a lower resistance into which the crystal may work.

The oscillator may be analyzed by the use of equation (3-1) (Chapter 3) if the amplifier is represented by its *Y*-parameters and the feedback network by its *Z*-parameters. The *Z*-parameters may be written from inspection and are:

$$Z_{11} = (R_e + R_3) + jX_e \tag{7-72}$$

$$Z_{12} = Z_{21} = R_3 \tag{7-73}$$

$$Z_{22} = R_3 + jX_{C1} \tag{7-74}$$

where $X_{C1} = -1/\omega C_1$. (7-75)

Also defining $\Delta Z = Z_{11}Z_{22} - Z_{12}Z_{21}$, we have (7-76)

$$\Delta Z = (R_3R_e - X_eX_{C1}) + j[R_3X_e + (R_e + R_3)X_{C1}]. \tag{7-77}$$

The analysis may be considerably simplified by assuming that the input and output admittances of the amplifier are real and that the reverse transfer admittance is negligible. Then $y_{11} = g_{11}$, $y_{12} = 0$, $y_{21} = g_{21} + jb_{21}$, and $y_{22} = g_{22}$. Also defining $\Delta y = y_{11}y_{22} - y_{12}y_{21}$, we have $\Delta y = g_{11}g_{22}$.

The general equation for oscillation given in Chapter 3 requires that:

$$y_{21}Z_{21} + y_{11}Z_{22} + y_{22}Z_{11} + y_{12}Z_{12} + \Delta y \Delta Z + 1 = 0. \quad (7\text{-}78)$$

Substituting the values for this oscillator, we have

$$(g_{21} + jb_{21})R_3 + g_{11}(R_3 + jX_{C1}) + g_{22}[(R_e + R_3) + jX_e]$$
$$+ g_{11}g_{22}(R_3R_e - X_eX_{C1}) + jg_{11}g_{22}(R_3X_e + R_eX_{C1} + R_3X_{C1}) + 1 = 0. \quad (7\text{-}79)$$

The imaginary part of the equation is given by

$$X_e = \frac{-b_{21}R_3 - X_{C1}g_{11}(1 + g_{22}R_e + g_{22}R_3)}{g_{22}(1 + g_{11}R_3)}. \quad (7\text{-}80)$$

The value of X_{C1} required to operate the crystal at series resonance is found by setting $X_e = 0$ and solving for X_{C1}.

$$X_{C1} = \frac{-b_{21}R_3}{g_{11}[1 + g_{22}(R_e + R_3)]}. \quad (7\text{-}81)$$

In the low-frequency case, when $b_{21} = 0$, we see that $X_{C1} = 0$ and R_3 is unnecessary. If b_{21} is not zero, we see that since the product R_3b_{21} occurs in equation (7-80), smaller values of R_3 result in a more stable oscillator so long as the crystal drive level is not excessive.

At higher frequencies the required value of C_1 may be quite small, and this may lead to unstable operation because of other potential modes of operation. It may therefore be desirable to place a 20- to 30-pF capacitor directly in series with the crystal to bring it up to frequency rather than to make C_1 too small.

Referring now to equation (7-79), we see that the real terms result in the equation

$$\frac{g_{21}}{g_{22}} + \frac{g_{11}}{g_{22}} + \frac{R_e + R_3}{R_3} + g_{11}R_e - \frac{g_{11}X_eX_{C1}}{R_3} + \frac{1}{g_{22}R_3} = 0.$$

Now representing the open-loop voltage gain of the amplifier by $A = -g_{21}/g_{22}$ and assuming that C_1 is adjusted so that crystal reactance $X_e = 0$, we have

$$A \geqslant \left(\frac{R_e + R_3}{R_3}\right) + g_{11}\left(R_e + \frac{1}{g_{22}}\right) + \frac{1}{g_{22}R_3} \tag{7-83}$$

for oscillation to start.

A few comments may be appropriate regarding the Y-parameters of the two gates in cascade. It is desirable simply to measure the admittance parameters of the amplifier. If, however, the Y-parameters of the individual gates are known, then it can be shown that the presence of a biasing (feedback) resistor modifies the Y-parameters according to the following relationships:

$$y_{11} = y_i + \frac{1}{R_1}, \qquad y_{12} = y_r - \frac{1}{R_1}$$

$$y_{21} = y_f - \frac{1}{R_1}, \qquad y_{22} = y_o + \frac{1}{R_1},$$

where y_i, y_r, y_f, and y_o are the Y-parameters of an individual gate. It can also be shown that placing two gates in cascade results in a final set of Y-parameters:

$$y_{11} = y_{11a} - \frac{y_{12a}y_{21a}}{y_{11b} + y_{22a}} \tag{7-84}$$

$$y_{12} = -\frac{y_{12a}y_{12b}}{y_{11b} + y_{22a}} \tag{7-85}$$

$$y_{21} = -\frac{y_{21a}y_{21b}}{y_{11a} + y_{22b}} \tag{7-86}$$

$$y_{22} = y_{22b} - \frac{y_{12b}y_{21b}}{y_{11b} + y_{22a}}. \tag{7-87}$$

As a practical matter, it may be satisfactory to experimentally optimize component values from typical gate oscillators in the same frequency range. Table 7-3 gives typical values for the components of gate oscillators at 7 MHz, 9 MHz, and 20 MHz.

As noted earlier, the frequency stability of the dual-gate oscillators

Table 7-3. Typical Values for Dual-Gate Oscillator.*
(See circuit diagram of Figure 7-27)

Frequency (MHz)	Gate type	R_1 (kΩ)	R_2 (kΩ)	R_3 (Ω)	C_1 (pF)	C_2 (pF)	L_1 (μH)
7	54LS04	1	3.9	none	none	1000	none
9	5404	0.680	0.680	100	470	20	15
20	54LS04	0.680	2.2	100	100	10	12

*See footnote p. 66.

is poor compared to the oscillators discussed previously. For the 20-MHz oscillator, typical gates pull the crystal about 5 ppm over a 70°C temperature range. This varies greatly from gate to gate and may be as high as 50 ppm. The frequency of the test oscillator also changed from 1 to 3 ppm for a 0.1-V supply voltage variation, which is about 2 orders of magnitude worse than for the single-gate circuit of Figure 7-26.

The 20-MHz crystal operates about 500 Hz below series resonance, which can be corrected by placing a 27-pF capacitor in series with it. The frequency can also be raised by making C_1 = 27 pF; however, with this value of C_1, the circuit is bordering on instability and must be carefully checked in the final mechanical configuration.

The voltage coefficient of the 7-MHz dual-gate circuit was found to be 4.6 ppm for a 0.1-V supply voltage change. The crystal operates about 2 kHz below series resonance.

It should be noted that the dual-gate oscillators, like the single-gate units, are prone to free-running oscillations, particularly if the crystal is not present; this must be considered in making the choice to use a gate oscillator.

Performance of the 9-MHz oscillator is much the same as that of the 20-MHz circuit. If a 54LS04 is used, the waveform is slightly improved by increasing R_2 to 2.2 kΩ.

7.7. INTEGRATED-CIRCUIT OSCILLATORS

A large number of integrated circuits (ICs) are available which can be used as crystal oscillators or which include a crystal oscillator. The information presented here regarding these circuits is related both to the design and the application of the devices, although it

is somewhat slanted toward the application. Many existing ICs require only the attachment of an external crystal, while some require other components as well. The circuits at the time of this writing tend to fall into three categories. The first provides a single bipolar or field effect transistor to which the external crystal and feedback network can be attached. For this class of circuits the design equations developed for transistor oscillators earlier in the section are directly applicable, and the frequency stability is generally quite good.

A second class of circuits, often using MOS technology, provide a gate which can be used as a crystal oscillator. The design techniques developed in section 7.6 for gate oscillators are then directly applicable and the frequency stability is generally equivalent to that of oscillators using discrete gates of the same type.

The third class of circuits is designed with a multistage amplifier on the chip and the external crystal either closes the feedback path from the amplifier output to its input or it serves as a frequency-selective bypass at some point in the amplifier. Many of these circuits are used as clock drivers for microprocessors (or on microprocessors), as frequency synthesizers, modems, TV circuits, phase-locked loops, and the like. As might be expected, the frequency stability varies greatly with the design, and while some are good, others are very poor indeed.

Because of the large number of circuits being introduced and/or available, a detailed treatment of specific circuits is impractical. A number of general comments and principles apply, however, which are helpful. It should be obvious that in most cases the application of sound design principles will result in an oscillator of increased stability at essentially no difference in cost from a poorly designed circuit and may make the product more useful. For example, a microprocessor may use a crystal to stabilize the clock frequency on the chip. A frequency error of 1 percent may be almost inconsequential with respect to operation of the processor; however, if the oscillator is designed well, the inherent stability may be ±0.0025 percent or better. The clock can then be used as the reference oscillator to control the carrier of a radio transmitter, the time base for a digital clock, or some other function as required. In such equipments the applications engineer may wish to examine the stability of several circuits to find a suitable unit for his purpose.

Since a considerable variety of amplifier configurations is possible on a chip, no attempt is made here to analyze specific circuits. An analytic treatment is developed based on the terminal parameters of the circuits. Several general comments can also be made regarding the design of multistage integrated oscillators. Since an oscillator is sensitive to both the amplitude and phase of the amplifier, circuits with a considerable amount of phase shift will cause the crystal to operate well below (or in some cases above) series resonance. To operate on frequency the oscillator must be designed to require the same reactance for which the crystal was calibrated when manufactured (see Chapter 5). This can be determined by measuring the frequency of the crystal at series resonance (see Chapter 5), or the desired load point, and adjusting the oscillator components to obtain that frequency. If the phase shift is not too severe a series capacitor can often be used to raise the crystal frequency. Very small values of capacitance may indicate that the amplifier is unsuitable, and may also result in a tendency for the oscillator to free-run through the C_0 of the crystal (see Chapter 5) rather than at the piezoelectric resonance. If sufficient gain and phase shift are present, free running may take place through C_0 even though no external capacitor is used.

It should be noted that the crystal can oscillate on odd mechanical overtones as well as on the fundamental frequency. If the gain is higher at the overtone frequency than on the fundamental, and if no tuned circuit is used, oscillation on the overtone will result. Conversely, if operation on an overtone is desired, it will in general be necessary to provide a tuned circuit which limits the region of gain to the vicinity of the desired overtone.

If the oscillator being designed may be operated over a large range of frequencies, it is important to check it at all frequencies in the band to ensure, first, that oscillation will always occur, and secondly, that free-running oscillations will not occur. A 20-MHz crystal may have a resistance of 10–20 Ω, while a 100-kHz crystal may have a 100-kΩ series resistance. It does not follow that oscillation at 20 MHz guarantees oscillation with a 100 kHz crystal as well.

Extensional and flexural mode crystals in the low-frequency region may have active spurious responses near the desired response. Excess gain in the oscillator may in some cases result in oscillation

on these spurious modes rather than on the desired frequency. When the circuit is turned on, oscillation builds up on all frequencies for which the phase requirement of 360 degrees occurs and the gain is greater than unity. The mode reaching the saturation amplitude first or having the most gain generally will survive and suppress the others (although it is possible to sustain multiple oscillations in some oscillators with high gain). The circuit should be carefully examined under as many conditions as possible to ensure that spurious oscillations will not occur. It is also good practice to check the frequency over the required temperature range as well as the frequency change due to supply voltage variation and load changes. The frequency drift over temperature caused by the IC can be determined approximately by connecting the crystal to the oscillator with the crystal external to the temperature chamber. A high-impedance balanced transmission line may be suitable for the connection. In some cases it may be necessary to use a small blower on the crystal to prevent temperature changes resulting from thermal conduction in the transmission line. A more accurate procedure is to measure the crystal temperature coefficient with a CI meter, Vector Voltmeter test set, or bridge, and subtract the crystal frequency drift from the total temperature coefficient. In a good oscillator the frequency change caused by the active circuit will be insignificant compared to that caused by the crystal.

While it is desirable in the design of integrated-circuit oscillators to use a set of analytic tools, the detailed equations for oscillation are generally too complex to be useful. Two approaches are presented here, based on the terminal parameters of the integrated circuit. In those circuits where the crystal acts as a frequency selective bypass in the amplifier which is internally crosscoupled, it may be convenient to think of the circuit as a negative-resistance element in series with an inductance. An approximate equivalent circuit is shown in Figure 7-28. A series compensating capacitor C is shown in series with the crystal. For on-frequency operation with a series resonant crystal, C should be resonant with L_0 at the nominal frequency of the crystal. The resistance R_n is a negative value and must be larger in magnitude than the equivalent resistance of the crystal for oscillation to take place.

It is possible to determine the magnitude of R_n in several ways.

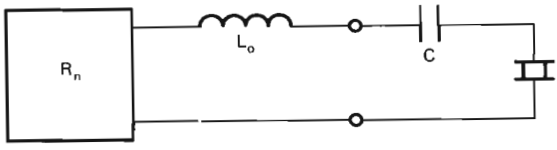


Figure 7-28. Negative-resistance oscillator with series compensating capacitor.

Perhaps the most obvious is to place a crystal between the appropriate terminals of the IC and add series resistance until oscillation will no longer occur. The magnitude of the negative resistance is then given by the sum of the crystal resistance and the additional series resistance. The magnitude of the oscillator inductance can be found by noting the difference between the frequency of oscillation and the series resonant frequency of the crystal (without C or the series resistance) and calculating*

$$L_0 = \frac{1}{(2\pi f_s)^2 \left(\frac{C_1}{2\Delta f/f} - C_0\right)}. \tag{7-88}$$

It can also be found experimentally by selecting C to obtain the series resonant frequency of the crystal. Then

$$L_0 = \frac{1}{(2\pi f_s)^2 C}. \tag{7-89}$$

Since the equivalent inductance will in general vary as a function of frequency it should be computed near the nominal frequency of the crystal to be used.

It is desirable to minimize the equivalent inductance of an oscillator for several reasons. First, the equivalent inductance will change with temperature and supply voltage, causing the oscillator frequency to drift. Secondly, it may result in free-running oscillations through the C_0 of the crystal.

The equivalent inductance is a result of phase shift in the amplifier and can be minimized in the design by using as few stages as possible

*See Figure 5-1 for definition of terms.

and by increasing the bandwidth of the amplifier. The negative resistance will, of course, be a function of the gain of the amplifier and the impedance level where the crystal is placed.

In general the circuit may have a negative impedance characteristic such as that shown in Figure 7-29. The negative-resistance region is restricted to a portion of the voltage current characteristic. As oscillation builds up, the voltage swings beyond the negative-resistance region and the equivalent resistance becomes less negative. Finally at saturation (or equilibrium if AGC is used) the equivalent negative resistance equals the positive resistance of the crystal. It can be shown[13] that the crystal current builds up according to the equation:

$$i(t) = Ke^{-at} \sin(\omega t + \theta) \tag{7-90}$$

where

$a = (R_1 + R_n)/2L$, and

$\omega = \sqrt{(1/LC) - a^2}$.

Here L is the sum of the crystal inductance and L_0. C_0 was neglected in the analysis. So long as R_n is negative and larger than R_1, the amplitude continues to build up. Finally when $R_1 = -R_n$ an equilibrium condition is reached. Equation (7-90) also shows that the frequency of oscillation is lowest initially and increases slightly as the circuit stabilizes.

Test data on several ICs of the crosscoupled type shows a wide variation in equivalent inductance, from approximately 1–2 μH to greater than 250 μH over the frequency range from 1 to 20 MHz. Therefore, while some ICs operate with the crystal near series resonance, others operated as much as 1 percent low in frequency.

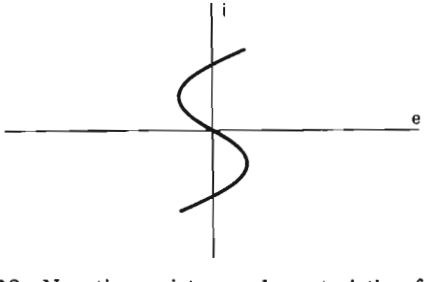


Figure 7-29. Negative-resistance characteristic of oscillator.

Some manufacturers provide excellent data sheets which not only characterize the equivalent circuit but also provide data on the environmental stability, and in some cases on the noise level as well. Others provide little more than a pin connection diagram showing where to connect the crystal. To achieve maximum versatility of the product, designers are encouraged to provide complete information on their oscillators. Conversely, if such information is not provided, the applications engineer should run complete tests on an IC prior to committing the circuit to production, particularly if a frequency stability approaching that of the crystal is required. Typical temperature coefficients for the better ICs of the cross-coupled type are 10–15 parts in 10^8/°C exclusive of the crystal temperature change.

As indicated earlier, a number of ICs use an amplifier on the chip and connect an external crystal between the output and input of the amplifier. While these circuits can be thought of as negative-resistance oscillators, it may be desirable to analyze them as amplifiers with a feedback network composed solely of the crystal. Such a circuit is shown in Figure 7-30. Here as before, the Y-parameters are used for the amplifier. From the definition of these parameters (see Appendix A) we may write the equations:

$$I = y_{11} V + y_{12} V' \tag{7-91}$$

$$-I = y_{21} V + y_{22} V'. \tag{7-92}$$

We also not that

$$V = V' - I(R_e + jX_e). \tag{7-93}$$

Solving the simultaneous equations for V gives:

$$V = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 0 & -y_{12} & 1 \\ 0 & -y_{22} & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & R_e + jX_e \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} -y_{11} & -y_{12} & 1 \\ -y_{21} & -y_{22} & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & R_e + jX_e \end{vmatrix}}$$

Since the numerator is zero, V will be zero unless the denominator is

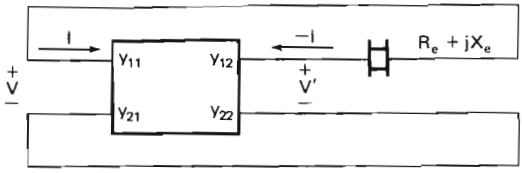


Figure 7-30. Integrated circuit with external crystal.

also zero. The conditions for oscillation may then be found by equating the determinant in the denominator to zero, which gives

$$\sum y + R_e \Delta y + jX_e \Delta y = 0, \tag{7-94}$$

where

$\sum y = y_{11} + y_{12} + y_{21} + y_{22}$, and

$\Delta y = y_{11}y_{22} - y_{12}y_{22}$

If there is no phase shift in the amplifier, the Y-parameters are real and from equation (7-94) we see that the imaginary part is satisfied by the condition $X_e = 0$, which is the desired operating point for a series resonant crystal.

Unfortunately, a multistage amplifier tends to have considerable phase shift, and the crystal normally operates below series resonance where X_e is negative. If the phase shift is not too severe, the frequency can be brought up to series resonance by placing a capacitor in series with it. (A note of caution here is that small capacitors, approaching the value of the holder capacitance C_0, may lead to free-running oscillations above the crystal frequency.)

An amplifier which has a considerable amount of phase shift at the operating frequency is undesirable from another consideration. The phase shift of any amplifier tends to change with temperature and voltage. An amplifier with a large phase shift will therefore also have a large phase change with temperature and supply voltage variation. The phase changes result in a change in frequency so that the crystal reactance makes up for the phase difference. The crystal reactance changes rapidly with frequency; however, variations of hundreds of parts per million can result particularly if the phase correction being made by the crystal is already approaching 90

degrees. It is apparent, therefore, that the fewer stages in the amplifier, provided the gain requirement can be met, the more stable the oscillator will be. Indeed the circuits using a single transistor with two external feedback capacitors in a π network with the crystal tend to make the best oscillators.

It is possible to plot equation (7-94) in two parts and in some cases obtain a better understanding of the crystal reactance required for oscillation. If a Smith chart is used the curve given by

$$Z = -\sum y/\Delta y$$

can first be plotted at the nominal crystal frequency as a function of input amplitude. A second curve representing $R_e + jX_e$ for the crystal as a function of frequency can then be added and the intersection represents the frequency and amplitude of oscillation.

The oscillator is not limited to operation in the resonant region of the crystal, and a search can also be made for spurious oscillations. This can be done by plotting Im Z as a function of frequency on a rectangular graph along with X_e, which will be a plot of C_0, the holder capacitance, except near piezoelectric resonances. Any intersection of the two reactance curves where Re Z is greater than R_e represents a potential frequency of oscillation and should be searched for during testing of the circuit.

A very serious problem may arise in using the Y-parameters here as equivalent admittances as a function of amplitude, particularly if the output stage of the amplifier performs the limiting function. Since the Y-parameters are measured with the input/output short-circuited, the real limiter will then not be measured. Under these conditions, the oscillator output voltage will normally be close to the peak-to-peak swing of the output amplifier.

Chapter 8 deals with tests which should be performed on any oscillator prior to committing it to production. Although some of the material presented here is duplicated in Chapter 8 it is felt that the designer or user of an integrated-circuit oscillator should be familiar with the tests recommended.

8

Preproduction Tests for Crystal Oscillators

Crystal oscillators are among the more critical electronic circuits and, as such, often experience difficulty in production. Certain tests can be run on the engineering models of an oscillator to assist in assuring that the circuit will not encounter trouble in production or, at least, that it will not require a major redesign.

Perhaps the most important test is to build three to five engineering models and make certain that none of them is marginal. Secondly, it is important that the oscillator circuit will have adequate reserve gain to function with maximum-resistance crystals. This test can be run conveniently by adding resistance in series with the crystal until the circuit will just oscillate. The total resistance (crystal plus the external resistor) must be higher than the maximum permissible resistance for the crystal type being used. In order to allow for variations in transistors and other components, it usually is desirable to have the circuit oscillate with two or three times the maximum crystal resistance.

A number of other factors should be considered in the evaluation of an oscillator. Several of these are obvious but are included here for completeness.

a. *Frequency stability.* The required frequency tolerance of the oscillator must be larger than the temperature variation of the crystal and oscillator plus the aging rate of the crystal. If no tuning adjustment is used, allowances must be made for unit-to-unit variation also.
b. *Output power.* The output power must be adequate even with a high-resistance crystal and a low-gain transistor.
c. *Crystal dissipation.* The crystal dissipation should be consistent with the discussion in section 5.4.

d. *Spurious oscillations.* The circuit should have a reasonable safety factor with respect to free-running and spurious oscillation. As a rule of thumb, the oscillator should be capable of being detuned to pull the crystal frequency at least ±10 ppm without spurious or free-running oscillations becoming evident. Switching the crystals and turning the oscillator off and on repeatedly in the detuned condition also may aid in discovering spurious oscillations. These procedures are inadequate, however. The only way to determine a spurious safety factor with any degree of certainty is with the aid of very low-spurious-ratio crystals for which spurious oscillation actually can be induced.

e. *Component tolerance.* The critical components of the circuit should be checked for permissible tolerance. This can be done conveniently by substituting components of the next size smaller and larger. In the case of gate oscillators, it is particularly important to obtain limit-active devices to check for spurious and free-running oscillations.

f. *Stray capacitance variation.* The circuit must be capable of functioning properly even if the stray capacitance or inductance configuration changes somewhat. This usually is unimportant for oscillators below 10 MHz. It can be checked by adding a 1- or 2-pF capacitor to ground at every critical point of the circuit.

g. *Crystal load capacitance.* The oscillator should be designed so that the crystal looks into the specified load capacitance (32 pF, 20 pF, or series resonance). This can be determined easily by having the frequency of a crystal measured at the desired load capacitance and then adjusting it to that frequency in the actual circuit.

h. *Supply voltage.* The oscillator should be checked to make certain that it will function properly with the minimum and maximum supply voltages.

i. *Temperature.* The oscillator should be checked over the entire temperature range with all conditions exactly the same as they will be in the final unit.

9
Other Topics

9.1. CRYSTAL SWITCHES

It is sometimes desirable to use a single oscillator with a number of crystals and a switching mechanism. This usually presents no problem at HF frequencies where the stray capacitance and inductance of the switch have negligible effects. At VHF frequencies, however, these strays can be extremely detrimental to the circuit performance.

There are two methods of lessening the problem and usually both are necessary in order to achieve satisfactory performance. First, an oscillator type which is reasonably tolerant of strays should be used. Second, every possible effort should be made to minimize the strays. The most effective means of accomplishing this is to build the crystal switch small. In the case of printed circuit switches, the use of small pads reduces capacitance. The switch collector rings often can be placed to minimize coupling to other parts. It may not be desirable to make the collector rings too narrow, however, as this adds to the stray inductance. It is very desirable to use a switch wafer which has a low dielectric constant. Teflon base materials are considerably superior to glass epoxy or phenolic boards in this respect. The bond strength is somewhat lower, however.

Depending on the oscillator type being used, stray capacitance in some locations may be more detrimental than in others. For example, in the impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator, stray capacitance from the base side of the crystal to ground is only of secondary importance, while capacitance across the crystal is very important. Lead inductance is not as critical for this oscillator as it is in the grounded-base oscillator. In general, the circuit should be examined to see which strays will cause the most harm; then they should be minimized, even at the expense of other strays.

A concept which is often forgotten in crystal switching is that

unused crystals must be effectively removed from the circuit. If this is not accomplished, the unused crystals may absorb power from the oscillator should they have spurious responses near the frequency of the oscillating crystal. This may result in serious degradation of performance or even cause spurious frequencies in some cases. Perhaps the most effective method of eliminating coupling to the unused crystals is to short them to ground. If this cannot be done, then the stray capacitance to unused crystals must be kept very low.

Stray coupling is often quite severe if diode switching is used. The diodes themselves usually are quite good but switching schemes which save diodes usually are not good. Often, systems employ ingenious methods to switch a number of crystals with relatively few diodes. They usually have several sneak paths through the C_0's of the unused crystals which may cause serious trouble or even oscillation on the wrong crystal. It is, therefore, recommended that a thorough investigation of stray paths in a diode switch be made if fewer diodes than quartz crystals are being used. It is sometimes possible to tune out stray capacitance by the use of an inductor in parallel with it. This also may be done to resonate out sneak paths in diode switches.

Switching of crystals should be discouraged above 100 MHz since the oscillators themselves are very critical. A switch merely makes a bad situation even worse.

If crystal switching in the VHF range is necessary it may be desirable to examine the impedance-inverting Pierce oscillator, since it is less susceptible to stray inductance than the grounded-base oscillator.

The availability of frequency synthesizers on a single chip in certain frequency ranges (for example, the CB band) may well make the crystal switch obsolete within the near future, and the application of these devices should not be overlooked before making the decision to use a crystal bank with switches.

9.2. PULLABLE OSCILLATORS

It is sometimes necessary to vary the frequency of an oscillator by a small amount and yet require that the oscillator be quite stable. This can be done using a crystal oscillator provided the pullability

requirements are not too severe. The frequency can usually be varied several hundred parts per million without much difficulty. If extreme measures are taken, the pullability may be as high as several thousand parts per million. Pullability and stability are opposing requirements, and even in a crystal oscillator the stability will suffer as the pullability is increased.

Perhaps the best way to pull a crystal oscillator is to put a voltage-variable capacitor in series with the crystal, an example of which is shown in Figure 9-1.

The pullability is determined primarily by two factors: the reactance–frequency slope of the crystal, and the reactance–voltage curve of the varactor. Since the frequency of oscillation will be near the crystal frequency, the other reactances in the oscillator circuit may, for practical purposes, be considered to be constant. From equation (5-3), which gives the antiresonant frequency of the crystal as $f_a = f_s[1 + (C_1/2C_0)]$, we see that the pullability of the crystal is larger if the C_0/C_1 ratio is small. A table of the C_0/C_1 ratio for some fundamental and overtone crystals appears in Table 9-1.

From this table, it is obvious that a fundamental crystal is most desirable. However, as the frequency is increased, the thickness of the crystal blank decreases and the unit becomes very fragile. The use of fundamental-mode AT-cut crystals is not recommended above 30 MHz.

The reactance–frequency curve of a quartz crystal is shown in Figure 5-3 and is fairly nonlinear because of the presence of the holder capacitance (see Figure 5-1). If an inductor is placed across the crystal to tune out the C_0, then the curve acquires another pole below series resonance and there is a relatively large region between

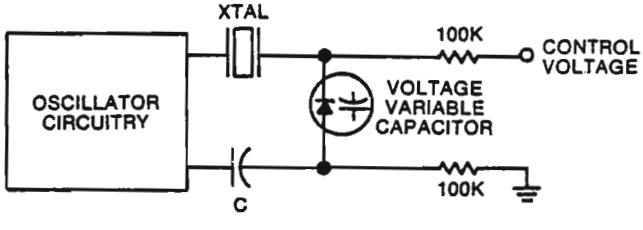


Figure 9-1. Typical pullable crystal oscillator: simplified diagram.

the two poles where the curve is linear. This slope is given approximately by:

$$\frac{dX}{df} = 4\pi L_1 \ \Omega/\text{Hz} \tag{9-1}$$

where L_1 is in henrys.

Perhaps the best way to study the reactance-frequency curve for a crystal is to use the equivalent circuit of Figure 5-1, with an inductance in parallel with C_0, and to write a short computer program for the reactance. This was done for a 30-MHz crystal with the following parameters:

$R_1 = 20\ \Omega$
$C_0 = 6$ pF
$C_1 = 0.03$ pF

The results are plotted in Figure 9-2 for the crystal alone and also for the crystal shunted by a 4.6-μH inductor. As can be seen, the curve is nearly a straight line. If a hyper-abrupt varactor with an exponent of unity is used in series with the crystal, a linear frequency–voltage curve results. Stray capacitance between the crystal and the varactor often reduces the pullability and linearity of a VCXO, and an advantage can be obtained by using two varactors in connection with series inductors. This arrangement, shown in Figure 9-3, allows

Table 9-1. Typical C_0/C_1 Ratios for Quartz Crystals.

Frequency (MHz)	Fundamental or overtone	C_0/C_1 ratio
0.2	fund.	400
2.0	fund.	270
6.9	fund.	230
8.8	fund.	220
12.5	fund.	200
31.0	third	2500
50.0	third	3000
60.0	third	3500
50.0	fifth	6200
60.0	fifth	6500

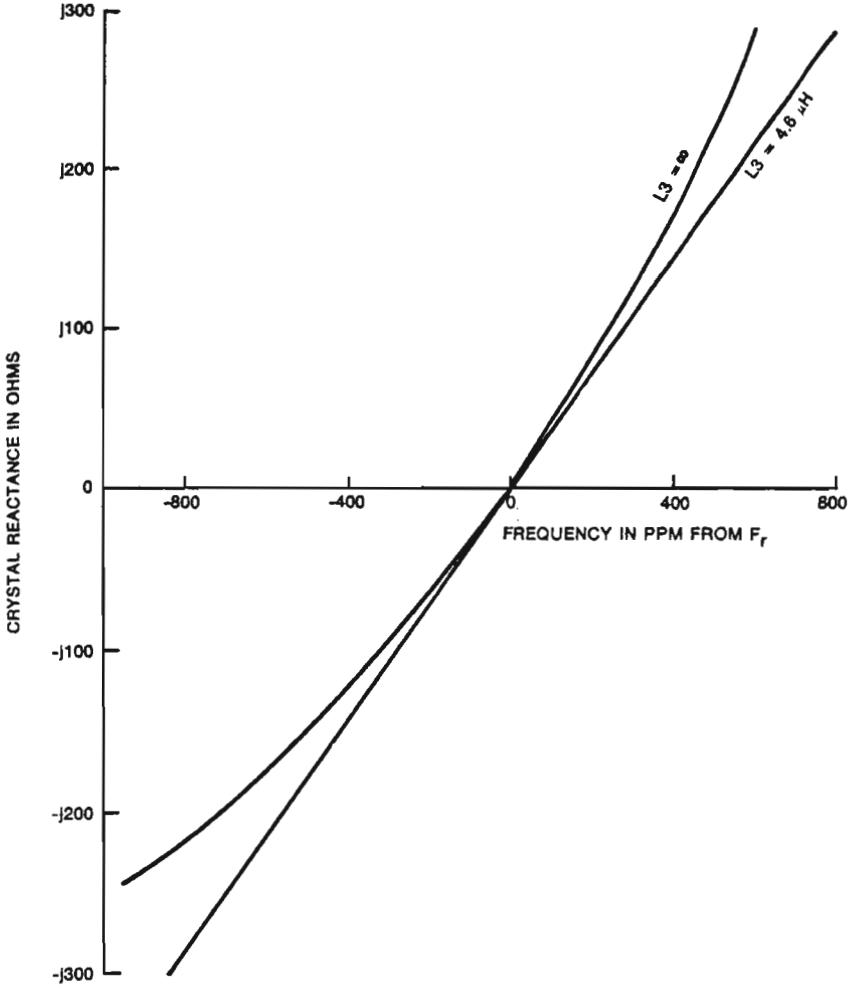


Figure 9-2. Reactance versus frequency for 30-MHz crystal.

the frequency to be pulled symmetrically above and below series resonance. A resistor is often necessary across the crystal to prevent free-running oscillations. Free-running oscillations are also minimized by using a grounded-base oscillator (see Chapter 7), since a tank circuit limits the range of oscillation to be near the crystal resonance.

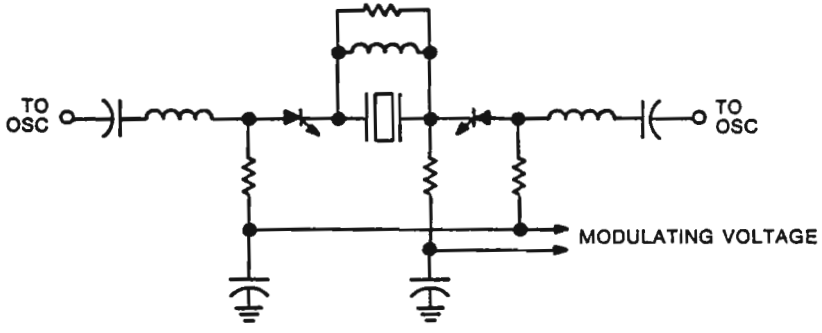


Figure 9-3. VCXO modulator schematic.

9.3. CRYSTAL OVENS

The design of crystal ovens is not considered in this book; however, it should be noted that when frequency stabilities beyond those obtainable by compensation are required, a crystal oven is often used. Crystal ovens are also used in some fixed-channel transmitters and receivers where replacing the crystal is required to change channels. A number of solid-state commercial crystal ovens are available for this purpose, and a stability in the order of 1 ppm can easily be obtained. The warmup time is usually not critical in these applications, and may be in the 5–15 min range. These ovens often accept plug-in HC-6/U or HC-35/U crystals and operate at 75°C or 85°C. If the warmup time can be tolerated, it may well be cost effective to use a solid-state oven designed to hold or clamp over the crystal.

In precision applications, both the crystal and the oscillator are usually packaged in the oven, and the oven is controlled by a thermistor sensor used in a bridge circuit with an operational amplifier. The amplifier drives a power transistor which controls the dc power to the oven heater.

A crystal oven of this type is capable of controlling the temperature of the crystal to within ±0.1°C over an ambient temperature range of −55°C to +75°C, and usually results in a temperature stability in the order of $\pm 1 \times 10^{-8}$. Various combinations of double ovens and hybrid arrangements using two heaters with a single control circuit are also available. The stability obtainable from a double

oven is often in the $\pm 1 \times 10^{-10}$ region. Precision crystal ovens normally use foam insulation or a Dewar flask for insulation, while lower-precision units may use a dead air space. As discussed in section 4.1.1, crystal ovens have several major disadvantages which makes them unsuitable in some applications.

9.4. SQUEGGING, SQUELCHING, OR MOTORBOATING

Squegging is a term applied to relaxation-type oscillations which sometimes occur in addition to the desired mode of oscillation. In most instances the squegging rate is much less than that of the desired oscillation. Frequency differences of one or two orders of magnitude are not uncommon. If squegging is severe, it actually may start and stop the desired oscillation at its relatively slow repetition rate. In less severe cases, it merely modulates the desired signal. Squegging can be observed most easily using an oscilloscope with a sweep rate compatible with the relaxation oscillation. The squegging then will show up as a modulation envelope on the desired signal. It also may be observed on a spectrum analyzer or a receiver as sidebands on the oscillator output.

Squegging is generally the result of several conditions. One of the strongest influences on it is the ratio of capacitance from base to ground and emitter to ground. This results from the inability of emitter voltage to follow changes in the average base voltage when C_e is too large. When this occurs, the situation often can be corrected by decreasing the value of C_e, by increasing the base-to-ground capacitance or by moving the ground return of the feedback network to the emitter directly. Other conditions have an effect on squegging also, such as the collector load and the shape of the characteristic curves for the transistor. Some transistor types therefore have a greater tendency to squeg than others. As might be expected, the tendency of a transistor to squeg is dependent upon its operating point and, in some cases, changing the Q-point may eliminate the problem. Squegging may also occur in gate oscillators, and can usually be cured by changing the values of biasing components such as shunt resistors.

9.5. SPURIOUS OSCILLATIONS

Problems are encountered occasionally with spurious oscillations in crystal oscillators. In general, the problem results when the crystal has a low-resistance spurious mode and the oscillator becomes controlled by the spurious rather than by the main response. The problem can usually be eliminated by specifying a sufficiently high crystal spurious ratio (ratio of spurious resistance to main response resistance). From an economic standpoint, this may not always be the best solution, however, and it may be desirable to design the oscillator circuit so that it has minimum tendencies toward spurious oscillation. Several factors, including the choice of circuit type, have a considerable bearing on spurious operation and are summarized here.[13]

In general the antiresonant oscillator circuits (Pierce, Colpitts, and Clapp) are less likely to cause spurious oscillation. A crystal spurious ratio only slightly greater than unity usually will prevent spurious operation. The VHF series resonant oscillators are considerably more prone to spurious oscillation. A spurious-ratio specification in the range from 1.5 : 1 to 3 : 1 may well be required to prevent spurious oscillation.

Several "spurious-causing" phenomena have been isolated which, if present in a particular circuit, will enhance the ability of the circuit to oscillate on a spurious mode. These phenomena are as follows:

a. *Excessive tank circuit Q.* This makes the oscillator circuit frequency selective and, when the tank circuit is mistuned, it may discriminate against the main response and allow operation on the spurious response.
b. *Excessive loop gain.* The circuit should be designed to have the lowest possible loop gain commensurate with operation of high-resistance crystals under worst-case conditions.
c. *Circuit elements directly in series or in parallel with the crystal.* In circuits employing a C_0 compensation inductor, the value of the inductor should be as large as practical.
d. *Interaction with other crystals.* If a bank of crystals is to be used with a crystal switch, the unconnected crystals should be shorted out if possible.
e. *Switching to an active oscillator.* In general, the possibility of

spurious oscillation is greater if a crystal is switched to an energized oscillator circuit than if the crystal is switched first and the circuit is then energized.

f. *Unequal initial excitation of main and spurious responses.* The presence of a parasitic or unintentional resonant circuit in the oscillator, which for a certain setting of the variable element is at the spurious frequency, may lead to spurious oscillation.

g. *Free-running oscillation.* Free-running oscillations or a circuit which can almost free-run may increase the possibility of spurious oscillation drastically if the free-running frequency is near the spurious-response frequency of the crystal.

In general it has been found, when analyzing spurious oscillations, that the mode which will survive is determined during the period prior to saturation when the oscillations are building up. All modes for which oscillation is possible begin to build up when the circuit is energized. The mode which builds up most rapidly causes the oscillator to saturate and the other modes to die out. To a good approximation, the oscillator may be considered linear before saturation and various modes can be analyzed independently (principle of superposition). This results in a considerable simplification if analytic treatments are to be considered in studying the behavior.

10
Temperature Compensation

The frequency stability of an AT-cut quartz crystal resonator as a function of temperature is determined primarily by the angle at which the resonator plate is cut from the mother quartz crystal. Curves showing this dependence are presented in Figure 5-6. These curves follow a cubic equation of the form

$$f = A_1(t - t_0) + A_2(t - t_0)^2 + A_3(t - t_0)^3, \qquad (10\text{-}1)$$

where f is the frequency difference between t_0, usually taken to be 20 or 25°C and the temperature t. (The values for the coefficients are given in section 10.4.) Improved frequency stability can be obtained by operating the units in a controlled-temperature environment such as a crystal oven; however, the disadvantages of such operation have become apparent in recent years, as discussed in sections 4.1.1 and 9.3. It is therefore desirable to develop other means for improving the frequency stability of quartz crystal resonators which are more nearly compatible with present-day requirements.

It has been known for many years that the resonant frequency of a crystal unit can be made to shift by placing a reactance in series with it. If this reactance is made to vary in such a manner that it counteracts the frequency shift of the resonator with temperature, a greatly improved temperature coefficient can be obtained. The advent of the varactor diode and the thermistor in the late 1950s first made this practical. A method of analog temperature compensation was developed in which a multiple thermistor–resistor network was used to generate the required voltage–temperature curve.[23]

At the time of this writing nearly all production temperature-compensated crystal oscillators (TCXOs) use this method, which we shall refer to as analog compensation. Generally, the frequency sta-

bility using this method can be made as good as 0.5 ppm from -55°C to +85°C in production by tailoring some elements in the thermistor network to the individual crystal being used. With great care, small numbers of units have been compensated to better than 0.1 ppm, but the procedure is rather tedious.

It is not surprising that, with the development of field programmable read-only memories (PROMs), digital compensation should be possible. Historically, because only small PROMs were available initially, the coarse compensation was done using analog networks, and the final corrections were made digitally. The general approach was to sense the temperature and use its value in digital form to address a memory. The contents of the particular memory location then contained the fine correction voltage required at that temperature. The digital correction voltage was converted to an analog signal and applied to a fine-compensation varactor in the oscillator. This technique is referred to as *hybrid analog-digital compensation* and makes frequency stabilities in the 0.1-ppm range practical in production. If a large memory is used so that the coarse analog compensation can be eliminated, we refer to the technique simply as *digital compensation*. Temperature compensation can also be accomplished by using microprocessing techniques in which the processor compensates its own clock oscillator or an external precision crystal oscillator.

These techniques are discussed in detail in the remainder of the chapter and, in some cases, experimental results are presented showing what can be achieved in practice.

10.1. ANALOG TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION*

As indicated earlier, most TCXOs in production at the time of this writing use analog techniques and, although many new designs will be digital, it is nevertheless of interest to discuss the technique. In general the procedure is to place a varactor in the oscillator circuit where it can pull the frequency at least as far as the crystal drifts in temperature. A voltage divider network composed of thermistors and resistors is then designed which will produce the required voltage–temperature function to compensate the oscillator.

*Several of the results presented in this section were developed under sponsorship of the US Army Electronics Command and are discussed in more detail in reference 1.

Normally, though not always, the varactor is placed in series with the crystal and has a capacitance–voltage function given by the equation

$$C = \frac{K}{(V + V_0)^n}, \tag{10-2}$$

where K, V_0, and n are constants (actually these quantities are somewhat temperature-dependent, but for a first approximation may be treated as constants). V_0 is the contact potential and is in the order of 0.75 V; n is primarily determined by the slope factor of the p–n junction and may be on the order of 0.3–2. For analog TCXOs, an n around 0.5 is often used and represents an abrupt p–n junction.

Solving equation (10-2) for V gives:

$$V = \left(\frac{K}{C}\right)^{1/n} - V_0. \tag{10-3}$$

The crystal load capacitance required to pull an amount $\Delta f/f_s$ in parts per million is given in equation (5-2) and may be arranged in the form

$$C_L = \frac{C_1}{2(\Delta f/f_s)} - C_0. \tag{10-4}$$

Substituting $\Delta f = f - f_s$ gives

$$C_L = \frac{C_1}{2\left(\frac{f - f_s}{f_s}\right)} - C_0. \tag{10-5}$$

Normally the crystal is cut slightly low in frequency so that when $C_L = 32$ pF the crystal is on frequency at 25°C. Thus we have $f = f_L$ at the load capacitance C_L. Now, defining Δf_L as $f - f_L$, the change in frequency from nominal, the load capacitance required by the crystal at Δf_L is given by

$$C_{x1} = \frac{C_1}{2\left[\frac{\Delta f_L}{f_s} + \frac{C_1}{2(C_0 + C_L)}\right]} - C_0. \tag{10-6}$$

The function C_{x1} can then be determined by substituting values of $\Delta f_L/f_s$ from the crystal curve such as shown in Figure 5-6. In prac-

tice only the limit values of C_{xl} are normally calculated at lowest and highest crystal frequencies. Then knowing the values of the oscillator capacitors, C_1 and C_2 (see Figure 10-11, for example), the varactor capacitance C can be calculated by recognizing that C_1, C_2, and the varactor are effectively in series. Thus

$$C = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_{xl}} - \frac{1}{C_1} - \frac{1}{C_2}}. \tag{10-7}$$

Finally then, using equation (10-3), the required voltage extremes can be found.

A large variety of thermistor–resistor networks have been successfully used to generate the required voltage function for TCXOs. One such network which works well is shown in Figure 10-1. It can be shown that the transfer function for this network is given by:

$$\frac{V_o}{V_i} = \frac{RT_3(R_1 + RT_1)(R_2 + RT_2)}{(R_1 + RT_1)(R_2 + RT_2)(R_3 + RT_3) + R_2RT_2[(R_1 + RT_1) + (R_3 + RT_3)]} \tag{10-8}$$

$$RT_1(T) = RT_1(T_0) \exp \beta_1 \left(\frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0}\right) \tag{10-9}$$

$$RT_2(T) = RT_2(T_0) \exp \beta_2 \left(\frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0}\right) \tag{10-10}$$

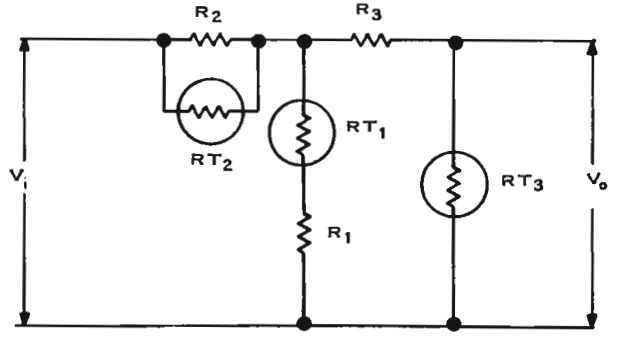


Figure 10-1. Three-stage thermistor network: schematic diagram.

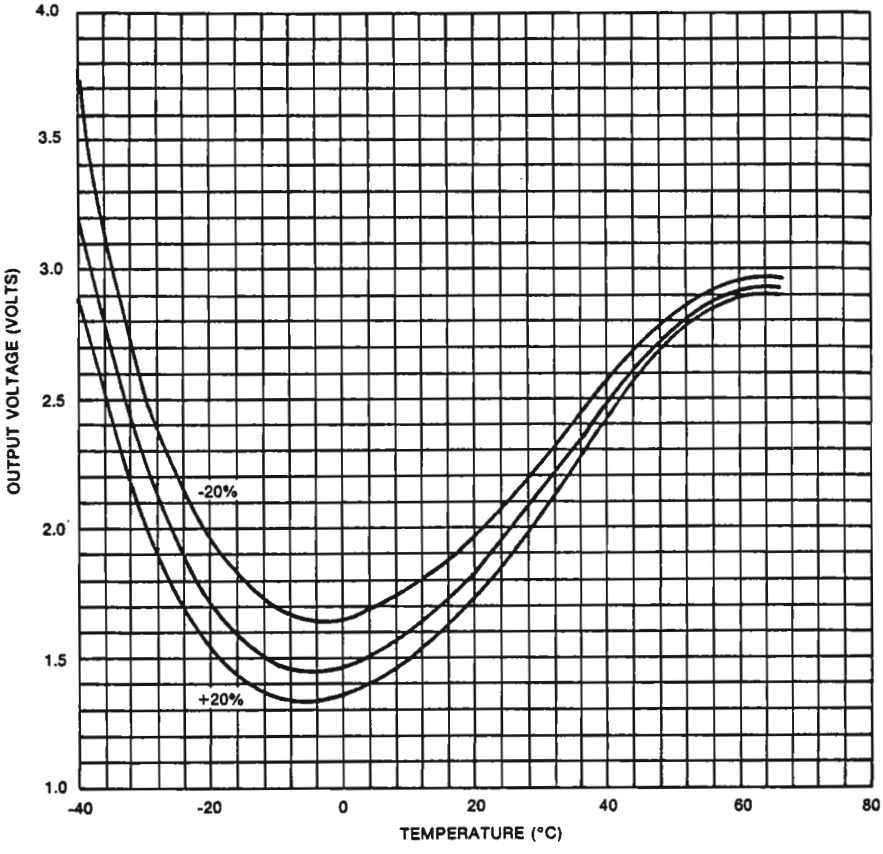


Figure 10-2. Voltage versus temperature for cold-temperature potentiometer R_2 (R_2 = 220 kΩ ± 20 percent).

$$RT_3(T) = RT_3(T_0) \exp \beta_3 \left(\frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0}\right). \qquad (10\text{-}11)^*$$

To assist the designer in manipulating the values of this network, a series of computer-generated plots is included showing how the various circuit values affect different portions of the temperature curve. These graphs are shown in Figures 10-2 through 10-10.

*Here β is referred to as the beta of the thermistor and is a measure of how fast the resistance decreases with increasing temperature. This temperature coefficient is determined by the composition of the thermistor during manufacture. T and T_0 are absolute temperatures in °K.

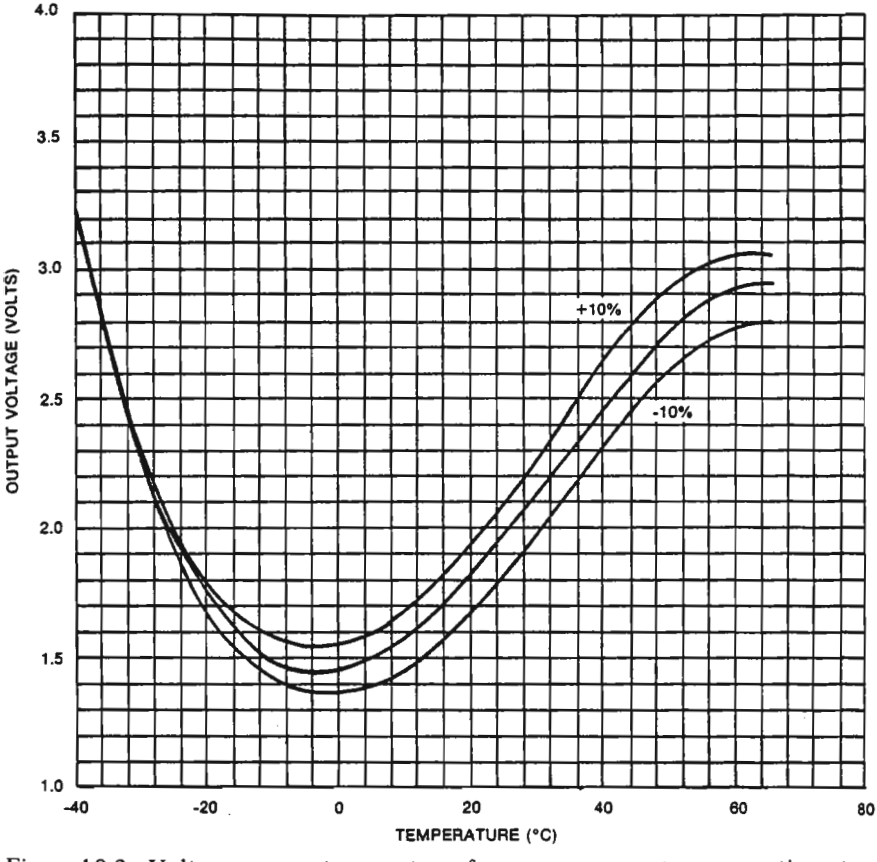


Figure 10-3. Voltage versus temperature for room-temperature potentiometer R_1 (R_1 = 22 kΩ ± 10 percent).

Because of the values chosen, the transfer function around room temperature is affected primarily by R_1 and RT_2, while the performance at cold temperatures is affected mostly by R_2 and RT_1. The transfer function at the high end of the temperature range is affected primarily by R_3 and RT_3.

A typical TCXO circuit diagram is given in Figure 10-11.

Because of the competitive nature of TCXO production, the actual procedures used by manufacturers to adjust the values of the thermistor network generally have not been available and the procedures in some cases involve as much art as science.

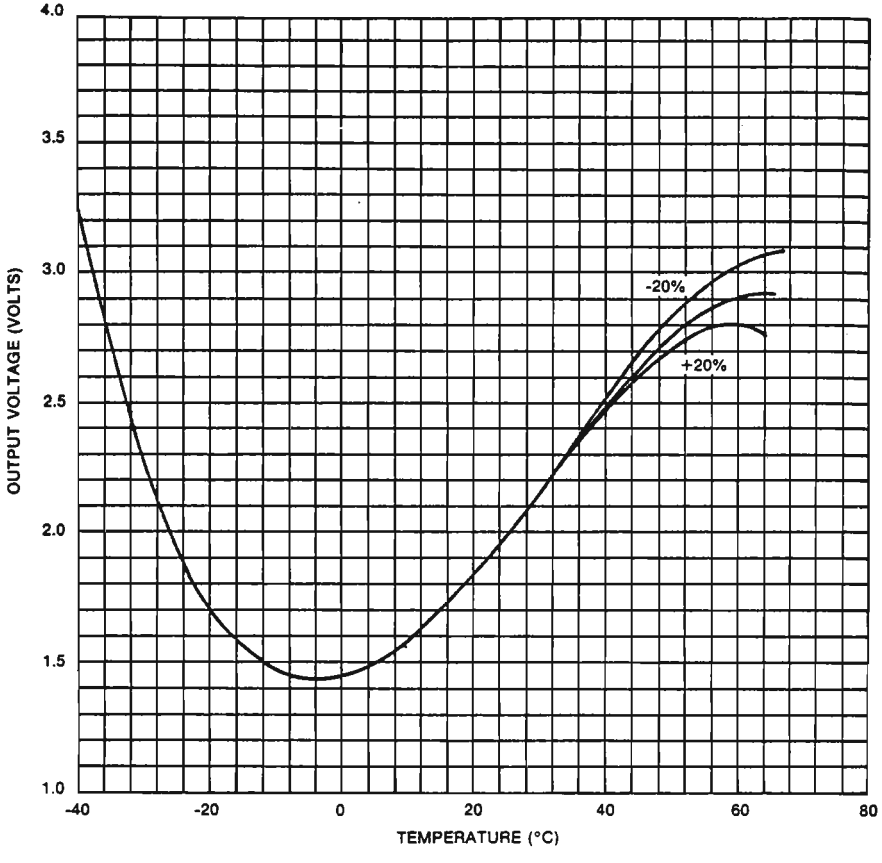


Figure 10-4. Voltage versus temperature for high-temperature potentiometer R_3 (R_3 = 33 kΩ ± 20 percent).

One approach which has been found to work well for the network of Figure 10-1 and an oscillator as shown in Figure 10-11 is described below.

The crystal is chosen to have an angle of cut so that the total frequency excursion between turning points is in the 35-ppm range. If an abrupt-junction varactor is used with an exponent of 0.5, its value is chosen to pull the crystal about 45 ppm from 1 V to two-thirds of the supply voltage. (A nominal value in the 20- to 50-pF range at 4 V dc should result.) A small selectable capacitor of perhaps 5 pF is

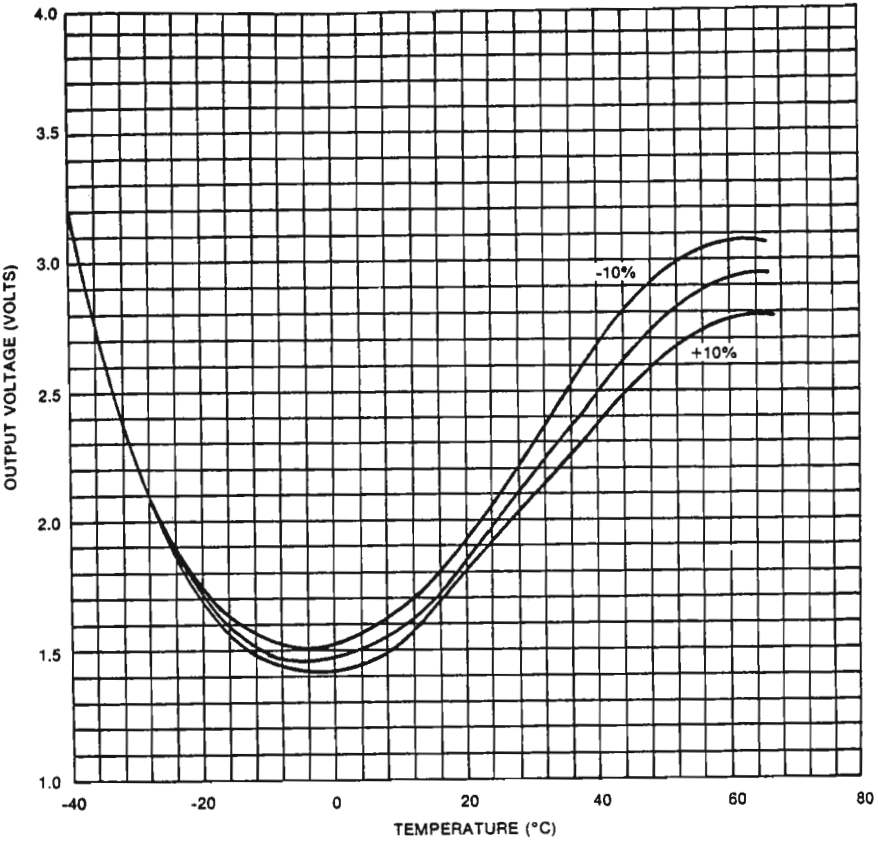


Figure 10.5. Voltage versus temperature for room-temperature thermistor RT_2 [$RT_2(T_0) = 100\ \text{k}\Omega \pm 10$ percent, $\beta_2 = 3900$].

retained across the varactor to allow final adjustment of the pullability. It has been found appropriate to use crystals which have a $\Delta f/f$ of approximately 160 ppm between series resonance and 32 pF.

For 12 V dc at the input of the thermistor network, R_1 (the room-temperature adjustment) is set for about 2.25 V initially. The oscillator is then placed in a temperature chamber and cooled to the lowest temperature, perhaps -40°C to -55°C, and R_2 (the cold adjustment) is set to put the oscillator back on frequency. The temperature chamber is then set to a temperature around the lower turning point of

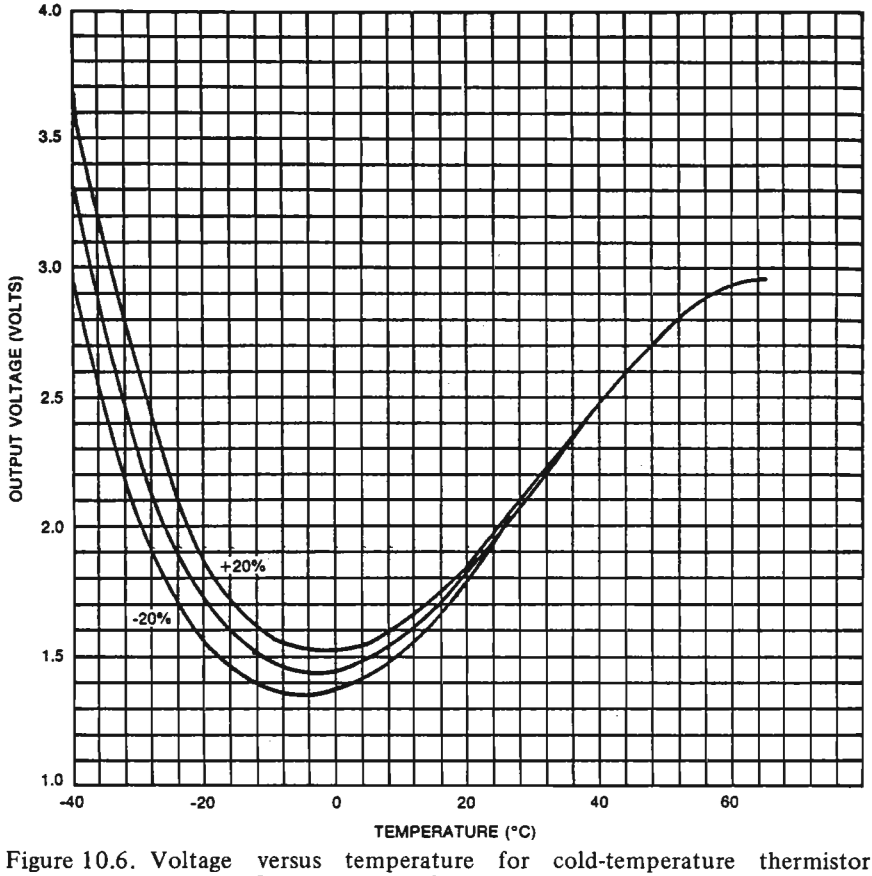


Figure 10.6. Voltage versus temperature for cold-temperature thermistor RT_1 [$RT_1(T_0) = 2.0\ \text{k}\Omega \pm 20$ percent, $\beta_1 = 4410$).

the crystal, usually about −15°C, and the frequency is checked. If the frequency is too high, the pullability is insufficient and the varactor shunt capacitor is reduced. If the frequency is too low, the shunt is increased. The procedure is then repeated, adjusting R_1 at 25°C, and R_2 at the cold extreme until the region below room temperature is compensated. The temperature is then increased to the upper extreme, usually 75–85°C, and R_3 (the hot adjustment) is set to put the oscillator on frequency. A confirming temperature run is then made. A typical completed TCXO curve is shown in Figure 4-1.

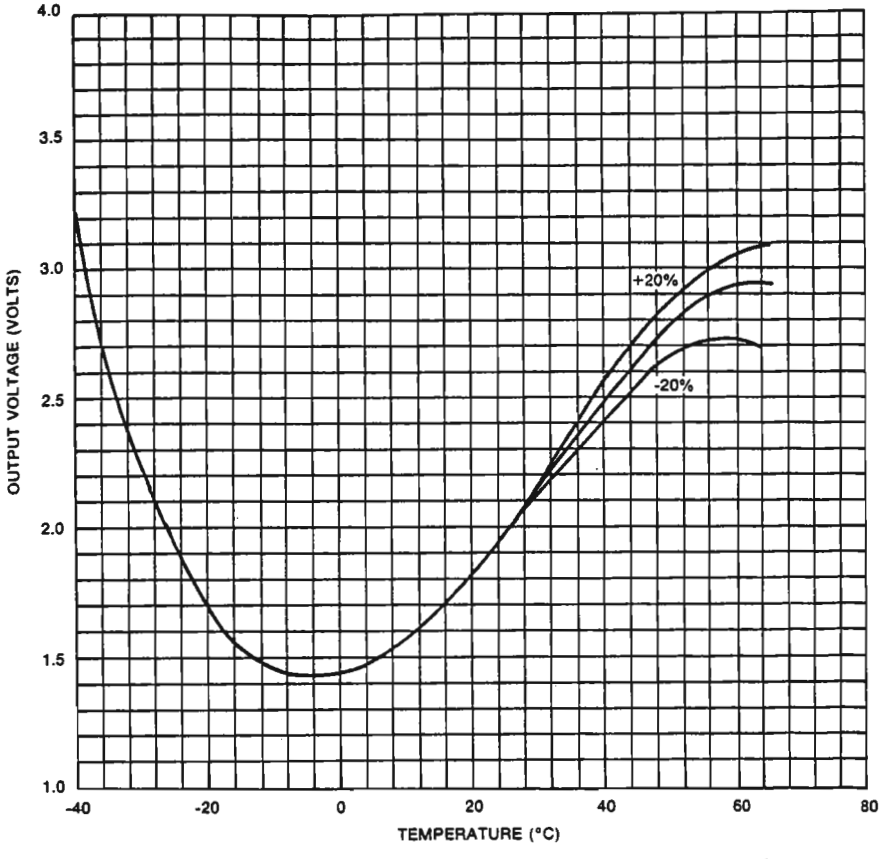


Figure 10-7. Voltage versus temperature for high-temperature thermistor RT_3 [$RT_3(T_0) = 1\ \text{M}\Omega \pm 20$ percent, $\beta_3 = 5900$).

For compensation to the 5- to 10-ppm range, a fixed compensation network with carefully specified parameters normally can be used, and the individual adjustments described above can be avoided. For tolerances in the 5- to 0.5-ppm range, individual adjustment is required. The compensation process can be reasonably automated for mass production.

Several other factors must be considered in the design of a TCXO, such as the voltage regulation at the input of the thermistor network and the load isolation at the buffer amplifier. Obviously, the voltage

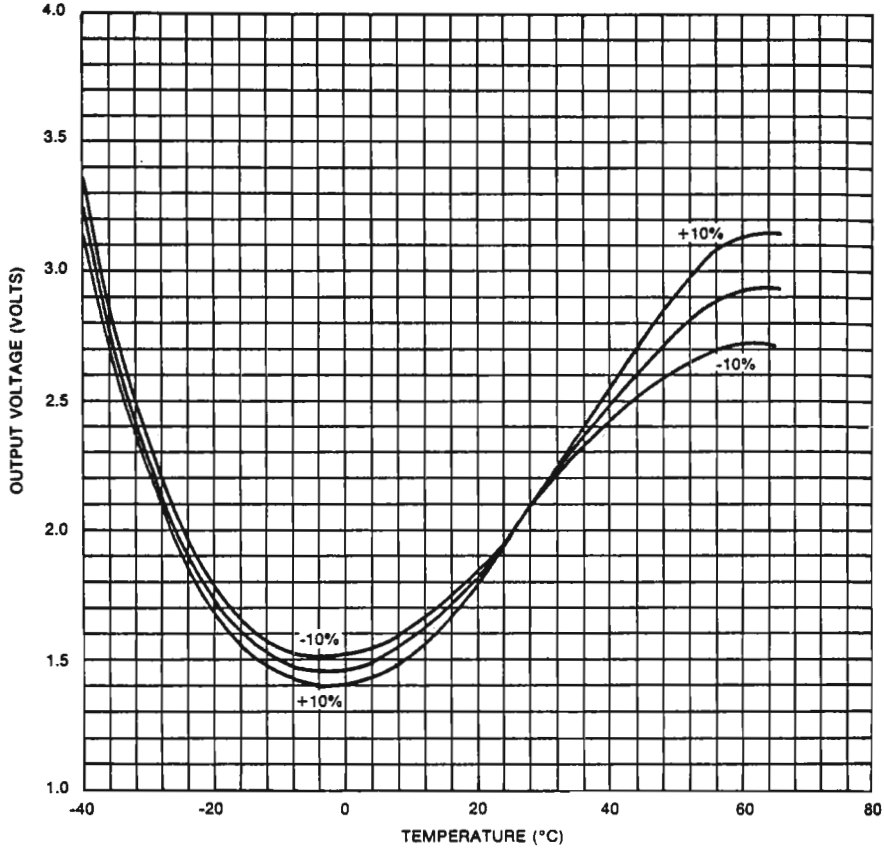


Figure 10-8. Voltage versus temperature for room-temperature thermistor RT_2 [$RT_2(T_0) = 100\ k\Omega, \beta_2 = 3900 \pm 10$ percent).

regulation must be sufficiently good so that changes in the supply voltage will not cause the varactor to pull the frequency by a significant amount compared to the frequency stability specification. In general, either a Zener diode regulator or a packaged integrated circuit regulator is used to supply current to both the oscillator and the thermistor network. It is normally of considerable importance to minimize the power dissipated in a TCXO because of self-heating and temperature gradients which may cause a frequency drift at turn-on. Therefore, a low-power voltage regulator is recommended to keep the input power below the 100-mW range.

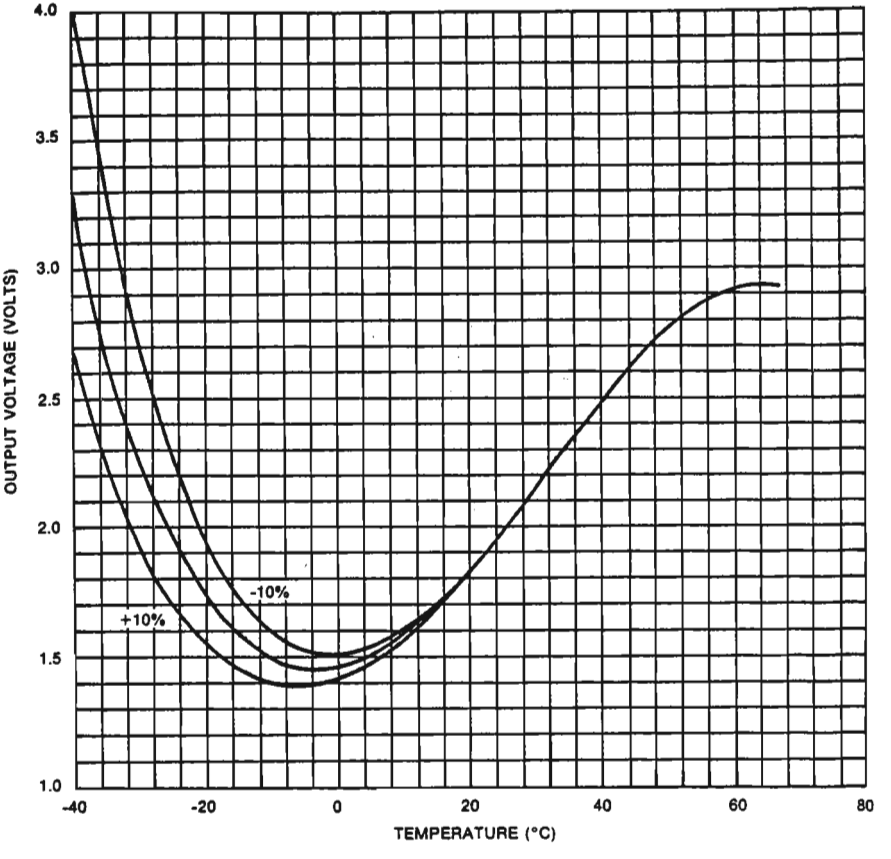


Figure 10-9. Voltage versus temperature for cold-temperature thermistor RT_1 [$RT_1(T_0) = 2\ \text{k}\Omega, \beta_1 = 4410 \pm 10$ percent).

As with changes in supply voltage, changes in the oscillator load can also perturb the frequency.

To analyze the effect, consider the phasor diagram of Figure 10-12, where E_s represents the signal voltage at some point in the oscillator loop and E_n represents an induced voltage from the output stage at the same point in the oscillator loop. Here the magnitude of E_n is exaggerated for purposes of illustration. The resultant voltage is shown as E_r. The phase shift in oscillator voltage caused by the presence of E_n is given by angle β. Angle α is the phase difference between E_s and E_n. By elementary geometry, we have $\overline{AB} = E_n$ and $\angle OAB = 180 - \alpha$.

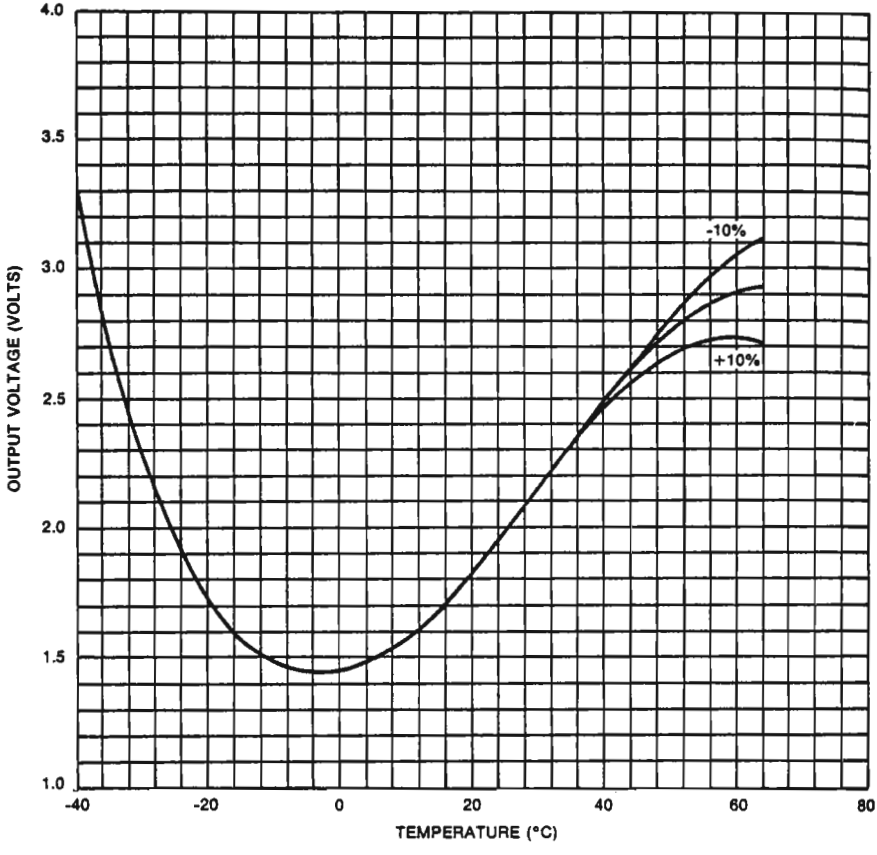


Figure 10-10. Voltage versus temperature for high-temperature thermistor RT_3 [$RT_3(T_0) = 1\ \text{M}\Omega, \beta_3 = 5900 \pm 10$ percent).

Then, by the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\sin \beta}{\overline{AB}} = \frac{\sin (180 - \alpha)}{E_r}. \tag{10-12}$$

Rewriting and substituting E_n for $\overline{AB}$ gives

$$\sin \beta = \frac{E_n}{E_r} \sin (180 - \alpha) = \frac{E_n}{E_r} \sin \alpha. \tag{10-13}$$

If $E_n << E_s$ (as would be the case in an oscillator of practical in-

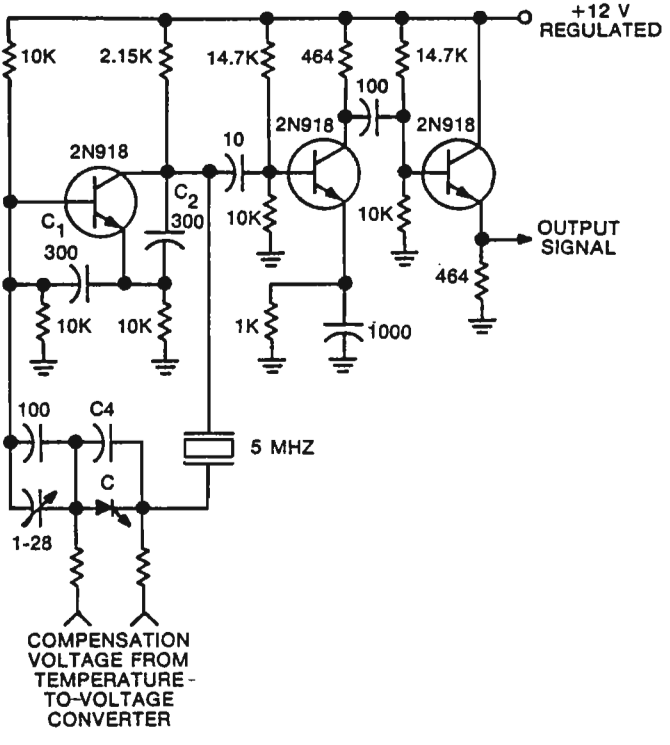


Figure 10-11. Temperature-compensated crystal oscillator and isolation amplifier.*

terest) we have $E_r \doteq E_s$ and $\sin \beta \doteq \beta$. Then

$$\beta \doteq \frac{E_n}{E_s} \sin \alpha. \tag{10-14}$$

It is now interesting to calculate the resulting frequency shift due to the presence of the induced voltage, E_n. To accomplish this, consider the circuit diagram of Figure 10-13. This is the circuit diagram of a crystal near series resonance. The current is given by

$$I = \frac{E}{R + j[\omega L - (1/\omega C)]}. \tag{10-15}$$

*See footnote p. 66.

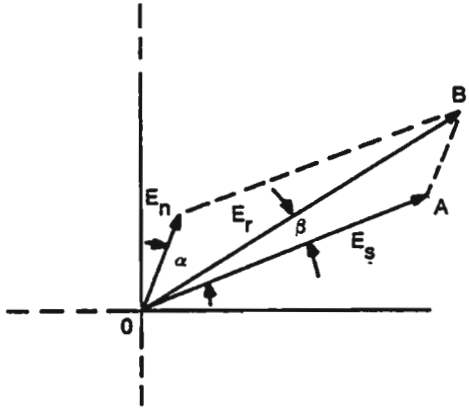


Figure 10.12. Oscillator voltage phasor diagram.

The phase angle of the current is given by

$$\theta = -\tan^{-1} \frac{\omega L - (1/\omega C)}{R}. \tag{10-16}$$

Differentiating with respect to ω, we have

$$d\theta = -\frac{1}{1 + \left[\dfrac{\omega L - (1/\omega C)}{R}\right]^2} \left\{\left[\frac{L}{R} + \frac{1}{\omega^2 RC}\right] d\omega.\right\}$$

Multiplying numerator and denominator in the second term on the

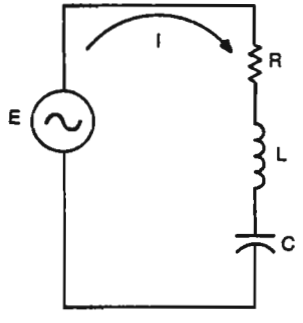


Figure 10.13. Series resonator circuit diagram.

right-hand side by $1/\omega$ gives

$$d\theta = -\frac{1}{1 + \left[\dfrac{\omega L - (1/\omega C)}{R}\right]^2} \left[\frac{\omega L}{R} + \frac{1}{\omega RC}\right] \frac{d\omega}{\omega}. \quad (10\text{-}17)$$

If the circuit is near series resonance, then

$$1 >> \left[\frac{\omega L - (1/\omega C)}{R}\right] \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\omega L}{R} \doteq \frac{1}{\omega RC} = Q.$$

Then

$$d\theta = -2Q \frac{d\omega}{\omega} = -2Q \frac{df}{f}. \quad (10\text{-}18)$$

For small changes, $\Delta\theta = d\theta$ and we may write

$$\Delta\theta = -2Q \frac{\Delta f}{f}. \quad (10\text{-}19)$$

We now consider an example to obtain a feel for the required magnitude of isolation. Suppose we desire $\Delta f/f$ to be less than 5 parts in 10^8 for a particular oscillator. Assuming a loaded Q of 25,000, we have

$$\Delta\theta = -2 \times 25{,}000 \times 5 \times 10^{-8} = -2.5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ rad.}$$

Substituting in equation (10-14), we find

$$\frac{E_n}{E_s} \sin \alpha = -2.5 \times 10^{-3}.$$

If α, the phase angle between E_s and E_n, is on the order of 90 or 270 degrees, the ratio E_n/E_s must be approximately 2.5×10^{-3} or, in decibels, E_n must be 52 dB below the oscillator voltage. If the voltage gain of the amplifiers is on the order of 20 dB, the required isolation is 72 dB. This assumes the worst case where E_n and E_s are at 90 degrees. If the phase shift of the amplifier chain is designed so that it is near zero or 180 degrees, much larger values of E_n can be tolerated. If, however, the load is allowed to vary from pure inductance to pure capacitance, α will vary approximately from −45 to +45 degrees, and the improvement would be only a factor of 0.707.

Still another consideration in the design of a successful TCXO is the elimination of hysteresis. If the oscillator frequency does not repeat exactly from temperature run to temperature run, it is nearly impossible to achieve successful compensation. Hysteresis is generally caused by a component such as a capacitor or resistor which does not repeat with temperature or which jumps slightly in value. For this reason, film resistors and monolythic ceramic capacitors are often used in TCXOs. If it is noted that the frequency of a TCXO does not repeat, it is usually wise to search for the faulty component prior to any further attempts at compensation.

Apparent hysteresis can also result from insufficient stabilization time at each temperature. The wise engineer will make sure that the frequency has truly stabilized prior to moving on to the next temperature. In many TCXOs, stabilization times in the 15- to 30-minute range are not uncommon.

In the discussion so far we have assumed that a varactor is used to pull the crystal frequency. It is also possible to achieve compensation in the 5- to 10-ppm stability range by placing thermistors directly in parallel and in series with fixed capacitors in the oscillator circuit. Although this approach is perhaps somewhat less elegant than the varactor approach, it is nevertheless cost effective in some applications. A particular advantage is the fact that a voltage regulator and varactor are not required.

10.2. HYBRID ANALOG-DIGITAL COMPENSATION[7,57]

Analog temperature-compensated crystal oscillators, as described in section 10.1, with stabilities of ±5 parts in 10^7 from -40°C to +70°C, have been a commercial reality for about a decade. Such units have been produced by the thousands at reasonable cost. Stabilities of 1–2 parts in 10^7 have been achieved in small quantities over the -40°C to +70–80°C temperature range, and stabilities of 5 parts in 10^8 have also been achieved over narrower ranges in quite small quantities. In general, compensation becomes increasingly difficult beyond ±5 parts in 10^7 because of the very small component tolerances involved, of the interaction of network adjustments, and of an undefined degree of electrical hysteresis in crystals due to thermal cycling. Partial solutions to these limitations, although not entirely desirable from a pro-

duction standpoint, have been the use of digital computers to solve network calculations and the use of analog segmented networks to provide greater independence of adjustments. Often a large number of temperature runs have been required to "massage" units into the 1-2 parts in 10^7 stability region. For the computerized approach, this is due to a lack of accurate component data and the inability to install the exact component values calculated. For the analog segmented approaches, the major difficulties remain the lack of true independence between segments and the accuracy with which components must be selected.

The temperature-compensation method described in this section effectively eliminates the component accuracy problem and the interaction of segments while allowing better visibility to evaluate and minimize electrical hysteresis. Using this approach, it has been possible to achieve temperature compensation to ±5 parts in 10^8 over the -40°C to +80°C temperature range under controlled test conditions.

A major portion of the effort to develop this approach was carried out by G. Buroker under the sponsorship of the Solid-State and Frequency Control Division of the United States Army Electronics Command.

A block diagram of the TCXO is shown in Figure 10-14. Compensation is achieved with both analog and digital techniques. The analog, or coarse, circuit is used in a conventional manner to reduce the oscillator temperature coefficient (TC) to ±4 parts in 10^7 or less; then the digital network adds fine corrections to reduce the overall TC to less than ±5 parts in 10^8. The TCXOs with analog compensation need only minor design refinements to be used with the hybrid approach. Primarily, these are improved voltage and load coefficients and a reduction in power dissipation.

For a typical unit, the RF circuit consists of an oscillator followed by an isolation amplifier. Stages may be stacked in pairs to save power. Power consumption by the oscillator stage and the first buffer may be less than 5 mW from the regulated source. The second buffer may require two or three times more power to meet the output requirement; however, in any event, the power consumption which results in internal heating should be minimized.

The coarse compensation network consists of the three thermistors and their associated resistors, as described in section 10.1.

Separate varactors are recommended for coarse and fine compen-

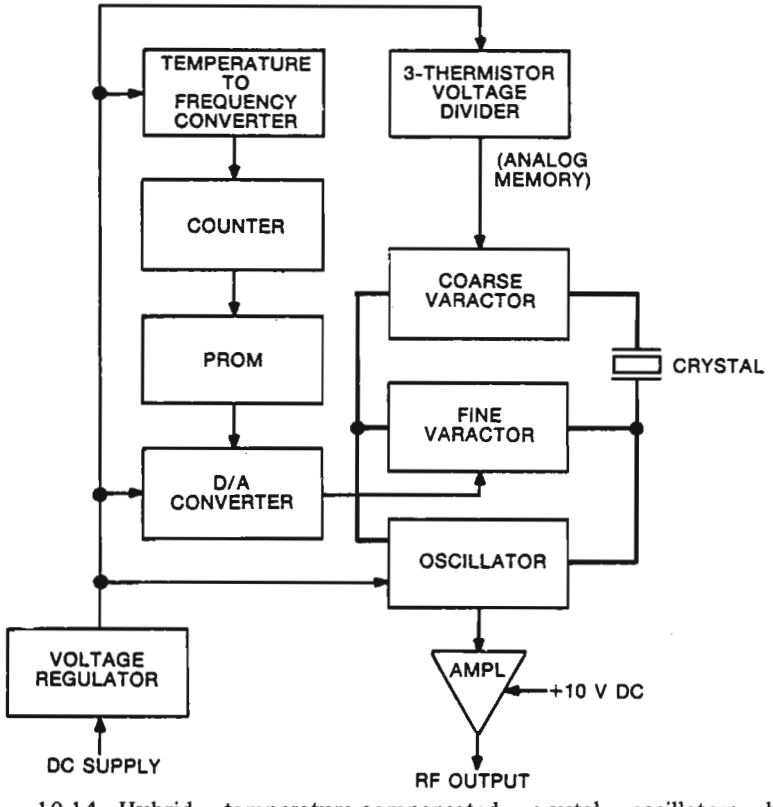


Figure 10.14. Hybrid temperature-compensated crystal oscillator: block diagram.

sation, so that the size of fine correction steps can be held nearly the same at all temperatures.

A block diagram of the fine compensation circuitry is shown in Figure 10-15. The object of this circuitry is to correct errors greater than the stability specification that remain after coarse compensation. This is accomplished with the programmable memory that remembers the proper, independent correction voltages to apply at regular intervals in the temperature range.

For purposes of this discussion, a ±5 parts in 10^8 frequency stability specification over the -40°C to +80°C temperature range is assumed. This is about the limit of what can be achieved due to hysteresis effects in the crystal and other oscillator components. The hybrid

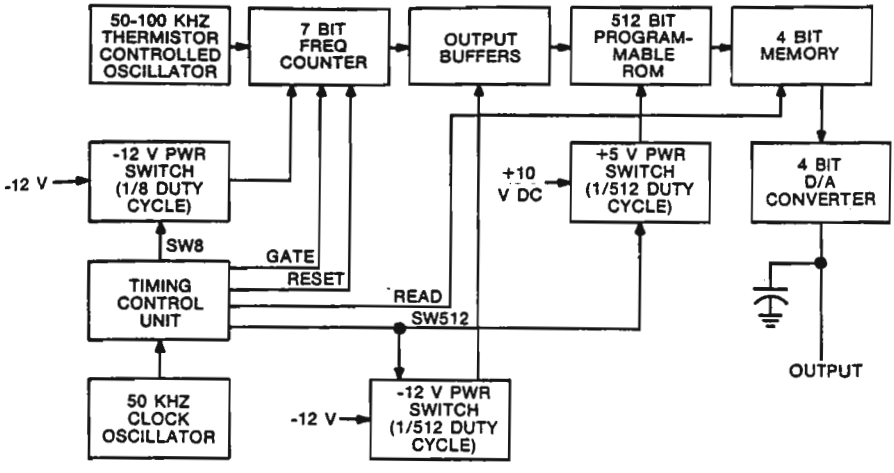


Figure 10.15. Digital fine-compensation network: block diagram.

approach can, of course, be used effectively in the 1–2 parts in 10^7 range but, as a practical matter, either straight analog or straight digital compensation (discussed in section 10.3) can be more economically employed for lesser stabilities.

Most of the development on the hybrid approach was accomplished during the early 1970s when the availability of PROMs and A/D converters in small sizes was relatively limited. Therefore, instead of using a temperature sensor followed by an A/D converter as described in section 10.3, a temperature-sensitive *RC* oscillator was used as the sensor, and the frequency counter as a means of converting the temperature to digital form.

The PROM was then addressed by the states of the counter. The D/A circuit then converts the output words of the programmed PROM to an analog voltage for TCXO correction. A clock and associated timing logic provide periodic updates and in general regulate the sequential operation of the counter.

Because of the relatively high power consumption of the PROM and the counters, switches are provided to sequence them on only when they are actually used; the control signals for these switches are generated by the timing control unit.

The required programming for the PROM is determined by stabilizing the TCXO at fixed temperatures, recording the states of the

temperature registers, and simulating the correction output word with a manual switch. Required programming at intermediate temperatures is interpolated, and the entire PROM is then programmed and installed in the TCXO.

The timing signals for the digital circuitry are shown in Figure 10-16. These signals were developed in the custom MOS chip called DIGITCXO.* The first event, at the beginning of a cycle, is to energize the frequency counter flip-flops. This is accomplished by SW8 and the -12-V switch shown in Figure 10-15. Once this is accomplished, the counter flip-flops (on the chip) are reset by a 20-μs pulse. The counter gate is then opened for approximately 2 ms. Upon completion of the count, the PROM is energized by SW512, and the latch is pulsed to store the outputs of the ROM. All circuits, except the timing control, are then deenergized for 18 ms. The DIGITCXO chip contains the 7-bit frequency counter and timing control unit. The finished chip measures 0.125 X 0.145 inch and was fabricated and packaged in a 22-pin, 0.5-inch round ceramic package by the Collins MOS facility at Newport Beach, California.

Compensation of the TCXOs is accomplished with the aid of an interface adapter which replaces the ROM during compensation. A 16-position rotary switch with binary format substitutes for the PROM output lines. The adapter allows the operator to stop, hold, and read an address and update by depressing a switch. The memory location being addressed is displayed in a decimal format using a 3-digit display.

Coarse compensation is accomplished with the ROM simulator switch set at midrange and is carried out using conventional techniques. The coarse network compensates the TCXO to ±4 parts in 10^7 from -40°C to +80°C.

After the coarse compensation has been completed, the following steps are used for fine compensation:

a. Seal the cover on the coarse portion of the TCXO in preparation for fine compensation.
b. Stabilize the unit at room temperature for a minimum of

*Developed under sponsorship of the Solid-State and Frequency Control Division of the Electronics Components Laboratory, United States Army Electronics Command, Contract No. DAAB07-71-C-0136.

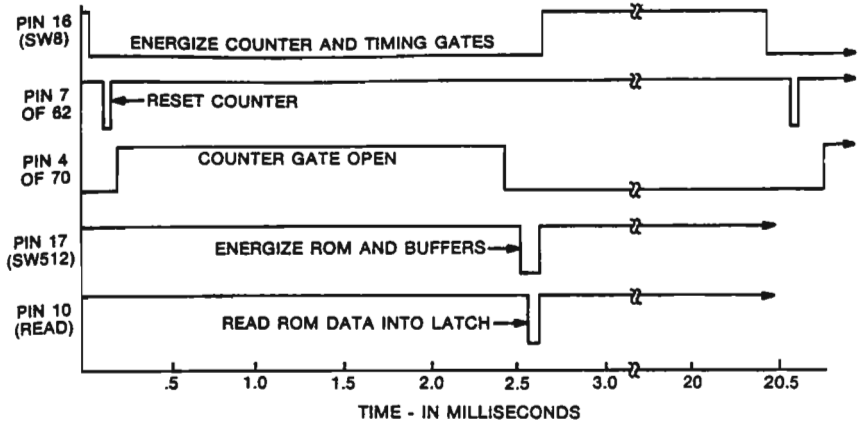


Figure 10.16. Timing diagram for MOS chip DIGITCXO.

10 hours. Beginning at -40°C, stabilize the sealed, coarsely compensated TCXO in 4–5°C intervals up to +80°C. At each temperature, record the PROM address and the decimal number of the (simulated) ROM output word that produces the smallest frequency error.

c. Tabulate the recorded PROM addresses and the desired corresponding output words. Estimate the required output words for intermediate PROM addresses by linear interpolation. (That is, if output words 8 and 3 were found to be required at addresses 107 and 112, respective intermediate interpolations are: 7 at 108, 6 at 109, 5 at 110, and 4 at 111.)
d. Program a PROM with the desired information using a PROM programmer.
e. Remove the cabling harness from the TCXO and install the programmed PROM. Clean the circuit boards and postcoat. Attach cover over digital compensation boards. (Alternatively, a confirming temperature run may be made before postcoating.)
f. Stabilize unit at room temperature for at least 10 hours. Repeat the preceding -40°C to +80°C temperature run at the same 4- or 5-degree increments to verify satisfactory performance.

The final frequency-temperature characteristic of a typical complete TCXO is graphed in Figure 10-17, along with the frequency-

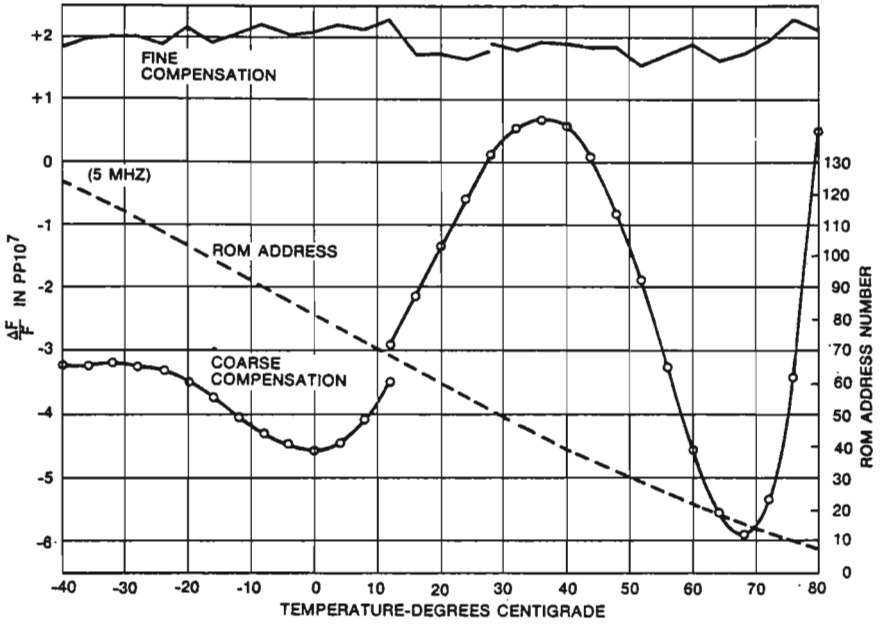


Figure 10.17. Characteristics of SN 8 after coarse and fine compensation.

temperature characteristic of the unit after coarse compensation. For this oscillator, the total frequency deviation was 70 parts in 10^8 before fine compensation and 7.5 parts in 10^8 after. Note that the curve has a discontinuity in midrange, caused by stopping the temperature run overnight. Stabilizing every 4°C from -40°C to +30°C, a complete temperature run requires two days. Also in the same figure is a plot of the PROM address versus temperature, indicating that a reasonably linear relationship was obtained.

10.3. DIGITAL TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

The advent of larger PROMs and integrated A/D converters has simplified the compensation process so that TCXOs using entirely digital compensation are practical. The block diagram of such a unit is shown in Figure 10-18.

The crystal oscillator contains a single varactor, as in the case of the analog-compensated oscillators and, by application of the proper

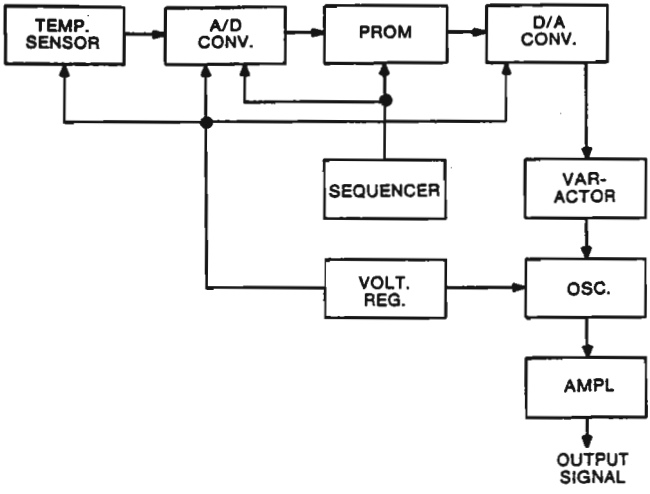


Figure 10-18. Digitally temperature compensated oscillator.

voltage to this varactor, the frequency is pulled by exactly the amount required to compensate for the temperature drift. In digital TCXOs it is generally desirable to use a hyper-abrupt varactor, with an exponent near unity, which gives a nearly linear frequency–voltage curve. The voltage range required can be found by the method outlined in section 10.1 with the aid of equations (10-3), (10-6), and (10-7). It should be noted that a voltage of less than about 1 V should be avoided because the RF voltage across the varactor may cause rectification and override the correction voltage.

The actual correction voltage is obtained in the following manner. First the voltage from the temperature sensor, such as a thermistor or diode, is digitized using the A/D converter. The digitized temperature word is then used as an address for the memory which contains the correction voltage required for the oscillator at that particular temperature. The contents of the memory location are latched into a digital-to-analog converter and the analog voltage is applied to the varactor. Since temperature changes relatively slowly, continuous corrections are not required. The temperature of an oscillator rarely changes more than 10 degrees per minute, and since the maximum rate of frequency change is less than 1 ppm/°C, a few corrections per second are sufficient. Consequently the A/D converter and the PROM

can be turned off most of the time to save power and may be pulsed on only momentarily when a new correction is being made.

In most cases, it is desirable to minimize the memory required by the TCXO; thus it is important to choose the optimum word size for a given stability. It is most convenient to use uniformly spaced temperature intervals to address the memory. The slope of the frequency–temperature curve of a crystal, of course, varies greatly over the temperature range, as can be seen from Figure 5-6. The memory word size and capacity must be adequate to accommodate the worst-case slope. For a typical TCXO crystal with a frequency difference between the upper and lower turning points of about 32 ppm, we find slopes on the order of 1.4 ppm/°C at -55°C, -0.5 ppm/°C at 25°C, and 0.7 ppm/°C at 85°C. Let the worst-case slope be represented by S. Figure 10-19 shows how the compensation varies over a temperature interval from t_1 to t_2 if the exact compensation values are used at t_1 and t_2. The worst-case error occurs just before t_2 is reached when the frequency correction contained in the t_1 address is still being used but the crystal requires the value near t_2. This error can be cut essentially in half by overcompensating at t_1 so that the compensation is correct midway between t_1 and t_2. This is shown graphically between t_k and t_{k+1} in Figure 10-19. The frequency error due to the slope is then given by:

$$\Delta f_1 = \frac{(t_{k+1} - t_k)\, S}{2} \tag{10-20}$$

Since a finite memory word size is used, an additional error occurs due to the fact that the exact desired value cannot always be obtained with a finite word size. In the worst case, the frequency can be set only to within one-half the frequency change represented by the least significant bit of the memory. Let this error be Δf_2. Then

$$\Delta f_2 = \frac{\text{total frequency correction range}}{2\ (\text{no. of correction levels})} \tag{10-21}$$

and the total worst-case frequency error is given by

$$\Delta f = \Delta f_1 + \Delta f_2. \tag{10-22}$$

We may then write:

$$\Delta f = \frac{S}{2}\left(\frac{T}{n}\right) + \frac{F}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2^b}\right), \tag{10-23}$$

where

S = maximum frequency–temperature slope of the crystal, in parts per million per Celsius degree.
T = the total temperature range over which the oscillator must operate, in Celsius degrees.
n = the number of words in the memory. Then each temperature interval is given by $t_{k+1} - t_k = T/n$.
F = the maximum peak-to-peak frequency excursion of the crystal, in parts per million.
b = the number of bits in each correction word.
Δf = the maximum frequency error to be allowed; in parts per million.

We wish to minimize the total number of memory bits required given by

$$M = nb. \tag{10-24}$$

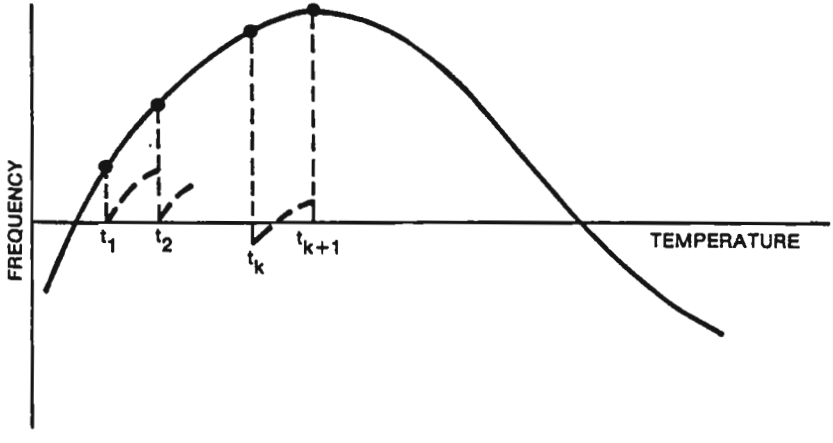


Figure 10-19. Frequency–temperature curve with exact compensation at t_1 and t_2.

Solving equation (10-23) for n gives

$$n = \frac{ST}{2\Delta f - (F/2^b)} \tag{10-25}$$

Substituting equation (10-25) into equation (10-24) gives

$$M = \frac{bST}{2\Delta f - (F/2^b)} \tag{10-26}$$

We may determine the value of b to minimize M by differentiating and setting $dM/db = 0$. We find

$$\frac{dM}{db} = \frac{\left(2\Delta f - \frac{F}{2^b}\right) ST - 2^{-b} bSTF \ln 2}{\left(2\Delta f - \frac{F}{2^b}\right)^2} \tag{10-27}$$

Equation (10-27) is zero if the numerator is zero. Setting the numerator to zero leads to the expression

$$2^b = \frac{F(1 + b \ln 2)}{2\Delta f} \tag{10-28}$$

Equation (10-28) cannot be solved in closed form; it must be evaluated by trial and error. Once b, the word size, has been determined, the number of words required can then be found from equation (10-25).

As an example, suppose that the following values are assumed:

$\Delta f = 0.1$ ppm,
$F = 32$ ppm,
$T = 85°C - (-55°C) = 140°C$, and
$S = 1.4$ ppm/°C.

Then from equation (10-28) we find

$$b \doteq 10.35 \quad \text{for} \quad \Delta f = 0.1 \text{ ppm}.$$

For $\Delta f = 0.5$ and 3 ppm, the values of b are 7.65 and 4.45, respectively. The values of M from equation (10-26) are given in Table 10-1 for several values of b and frequency stabilities of 0.1, 0.5, and 3 ppm for the crystal and temperature range above. Thus we see that it is possible to build a 0.5-ppm TCXO with an 8 X 256 PROM. In

Table 10-1. Memory Size for $F = 32$ ppm, $S = 1.4$ ppm, and $T = 140°C$.

Word size (bits)	Memory size (bits)		
	0.1 ppm	0.5 ppm	3 ppm
4	–	–	196
5	–	–	196
6	–	–	214
7	–	1,829	238
8	20,906	1,792	267
10	11,615	2,023	–
11	11,694	–	–
12	12,238	–	–

many cases it may be convenient not to offset the corrections as was done at t_k and t_{k+1} in Figure 10-19 to achieve optimum performance. If compensation is accomplished simply by using the nearest available value at the temperature breakpoints, then twice the number of words are required.*

10.4. TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION WITH MICROPROCESSORS

From section 10.3 it can be seen that the memory requirements for digital compensation beyond 0.5 ppm are substantial and that it is desirable to operate on the stored data in some manner to reduce the number of correction values required. Perhaps the simplest algorithm which can be used is to interpolate between stored data points. This can be accomplished in several ways using digital logic or digital–analog combinations. Perhaps the most attractive means, however, is by the use of a microprocessor. Because of the availability of low-cost microprocessors, many items of communications equipment are being designed with a processor. In some cases, the microprocessor can be used to generate frequency corrections during idle time. A one-shot multivibrator can be used to request an interrupt every few seconds, or the processor may be programmed to service the TCXO

*Digital compensation of crystal oscillators is discussed in reference 47, which also contains several interesting variations of the basic approach discussed here.

at regular intervals. In other applications, as minimum microprocessor systems become available with self-contained I/O, PROM, and RAM on the chip, it is desirable to include a dedicated microprocessor in a semiprecision or precision frequency standard. The processor can be pulsed on momentarily to generate a correction and then turned off to save power and reduce self-heating.

An experiment was conducted to demonstrate the feasibility of temperature-compensating a crystal oscillator using the INTEL-8080 processor. A linear interpolation program was used to generate correction voltages from the following equation:

$$V = V_n + \frac{(V_{n+1} - V_n)(t - t_n)}{(t_{n+1} - t_n)}. \tag{10-29}$$

Here the temperature t is assumed to be between the stored values t_n and t_{n+1}, which correspond to compensating voltages of V_n and V_{n+1}, respectively.

A linear temperature sensor was used in the crystal oscillator and the output of the sensor was converted to an 8-bit digital number using a single-chip A/D converter. After the correction voltage was calculated, the output was converted to an analog signal and applied to the varactor. The program was written to allow 16-bit temperature data, although only 8 bits were used for the test oscillator.* It should be noted that although 16-bit temperature words can be accepted, the difference between any two adjacent temperatures may not exceed 7 bits.

A flow chart of the temperature-compensation program is given in Figure 10-20. Once the temperature is determined, a search is made for a correction value. If the exact value is found, no calculation is required and a test is made to determine if the correction voltage is the same as that determined on the previous pass. If so, the output value is left unchanged and a branch is made to repeat the program. If the correction value is different, the new value is read into the output latch and a branch is executed to the beginning of the pro-

*It is also possible to determine the temperature by using the processor to count the frequency of a thermistor-controlled *RC* oscillator. Approximately 33 machine level instructions are required to determine temperature in this way. The method was not used in this experiment.

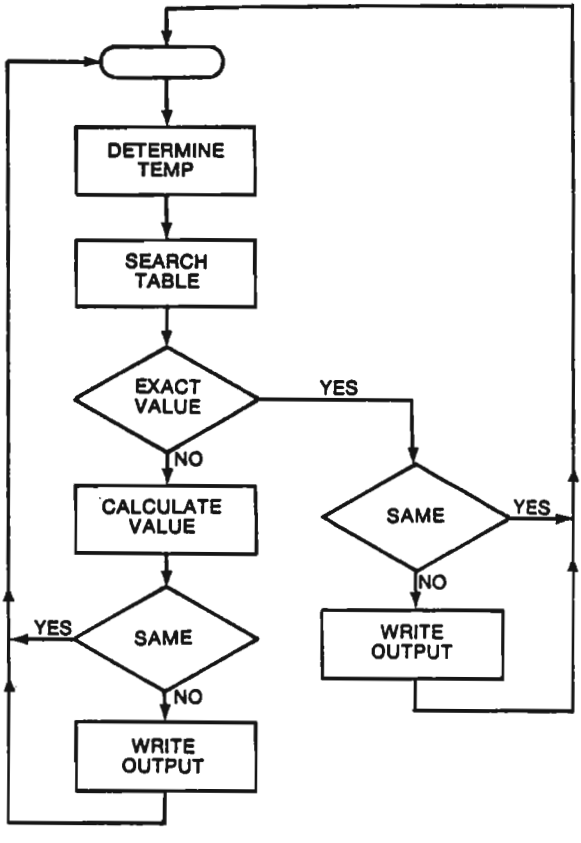


Figure 10-20. Overall flow chart of temperature compensation program.

gram. In the more likely event that the exact correction value is not stored for the particular ambient temperature under consideration, the search routine finds the nearest temperature-voltage pair above and below the actual temperature. The interpolation program then calculates a correction voltage based on equation (10-29), and a test is made to determine if the correction is different from the value found in the previous pass. If so, the output latch is updated and control is passed to the beginning of the program. If the output is the same, the latch is left unchanged.

A graph of the curve for the uncompensated crystal oscillator is shown in Figure 10-21 along with the final compensated curve. The

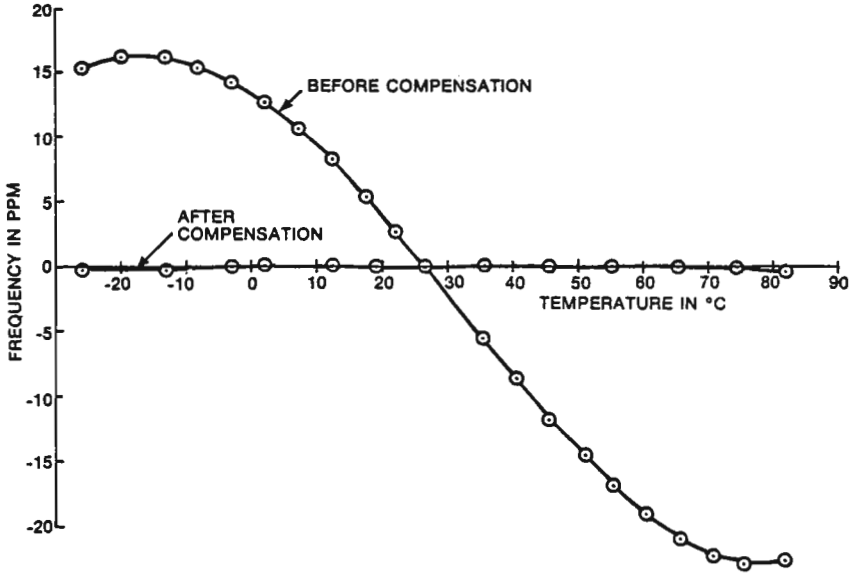


Figure 10-21. Frequency–Temperature for microprocessor compensated crystal oscillator.

compensated curve is also shown in Figure 10-22 with the ordinate expanded by a factor of 25. As can be seen, the frequency of this 5-MHz crystal oscillator is within $+2 \times 10^{-7}$ to -4×10^{-7} of the normal frequency over the entire temperature range from -26°C to +82°C.* A schematic diagram of the oscillator is shown in Figure 10-23. The A/D converter, not shown, was an MM4357. The D/A converter, shown in Figure 10-24, consists of 8 CMOS buffers followed by a ladder network. A simplified block diagram of the processor is shown in Figure 10-25. An INTEL-MCS-80 design system was used, and the program for the test oscillator was stored in RAM via a TTY.

The test setup is shown in Figure 10-26 and includes the TTY as well as a small test fixture used to monitor the temperature. The test fixture also has the capability to force the digital output to any

*The processor itself was not included in the temperature chamber; however, the crystal oscillator as well as the A/D and D/A converters were exposed to the temperature change.

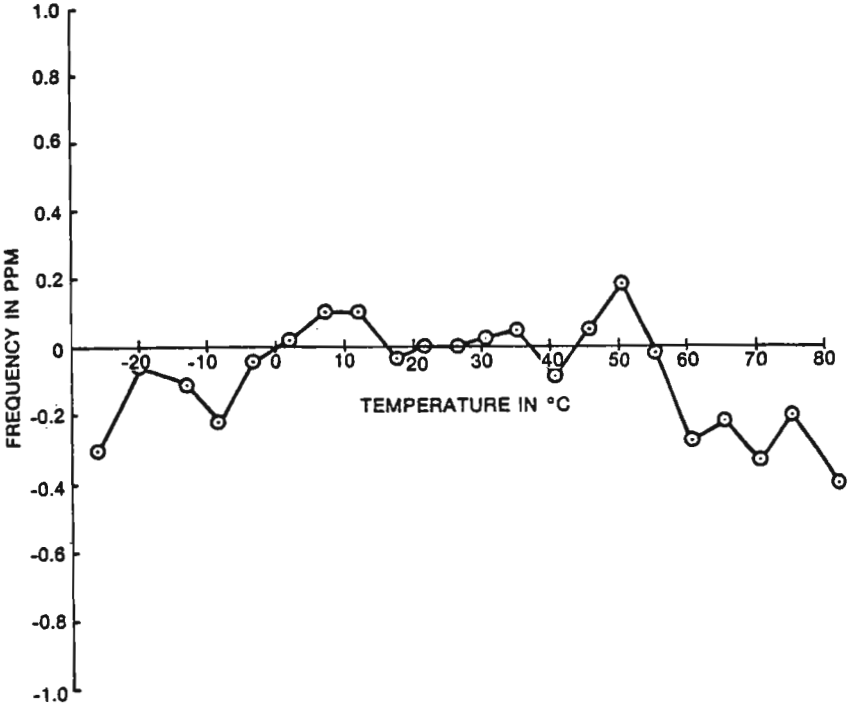


Figure 10-22. Frequency–Temperature for microprocessor compensated crystal oscillator (expanded scale).

value, thus allowing convenient data taking on the initial temperature run when the correction table is being determined. The oscillator is initially run over temperature and, at intervals of 5–10 degrees, the output switches are adjusted to put the oscillator on frequency. The temperature (address) is then read and recorded along with the correction required. The values used in this experiment are listed in hexadecimal notation, in Table 10-2. Photographs of the temperature chamber, the processor, test fixture, and oscillator are shown in Figures 10-27, 28, 29, and 30.

The microprocessor program was written in assembly language and requires 221 bytes of storage. In addition, 10 bytes of RAM are required as scratch-pad memory. A listing of the memory assignments is given in Tables 10-3 and 10-4.

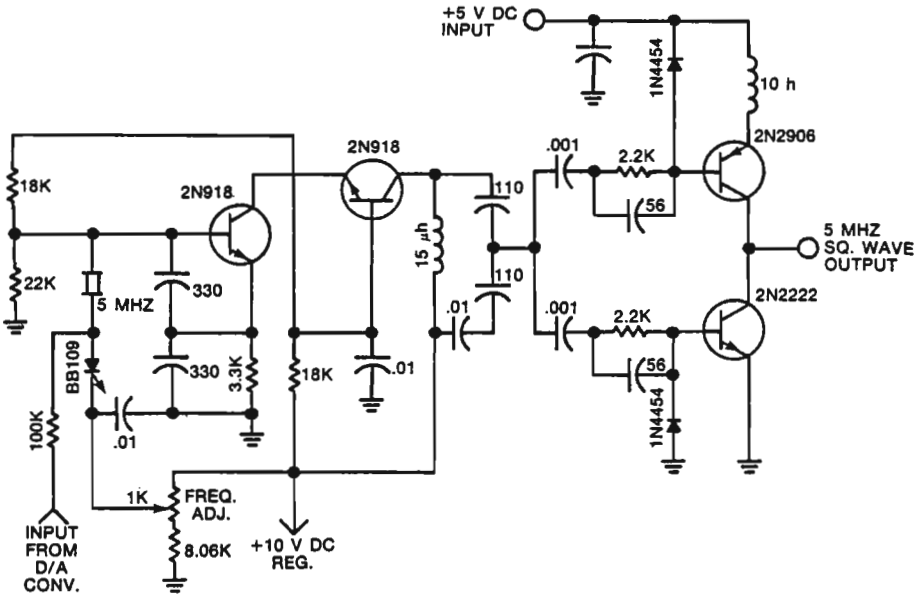


Figure 10-23. Schematic diagram of experimental oscillator using INTEL-8080 processor.

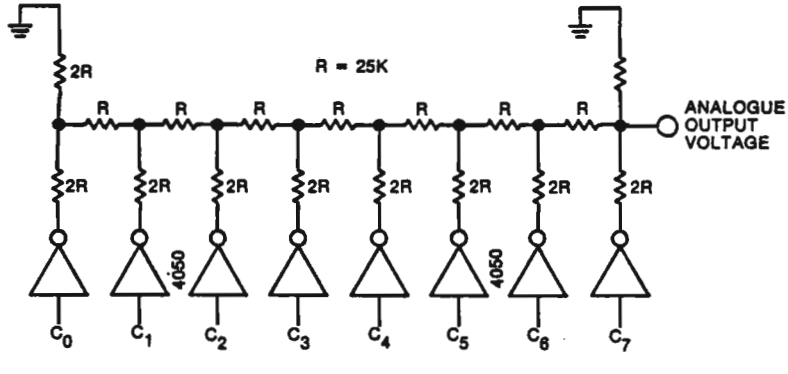


Figure 10-24. Digital-to-analog converter used with TCXO shown in Figure 10-23.

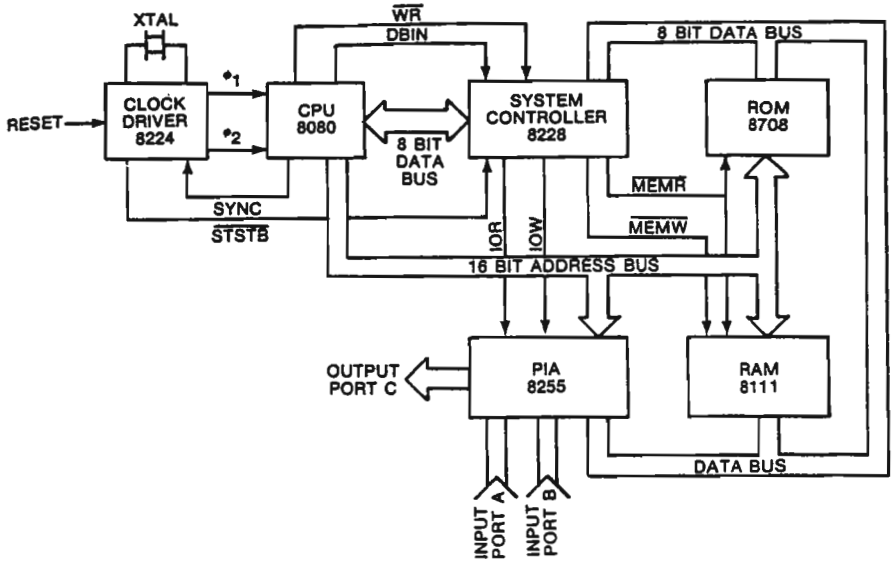


Figure 10-25. Simplified block diagram of processor used with TCXO shown in Figure 10-23.

Table 10-2. Stored Temperature-Frequency Correction Data.

Temp.	Corr.	Temp.	Corr.
00	00	78	A5
0A	61	82	8D
14	A3	8C	74
1E	CA	96	5D
28	DF	A0	45
32	ED	AA	30
3C	F0	B4	1E
46	EE	BE	12
50	E7	C8	0D
5A	DC	D2	0F
64	CC	D7	13
6E	BA	FF	FF

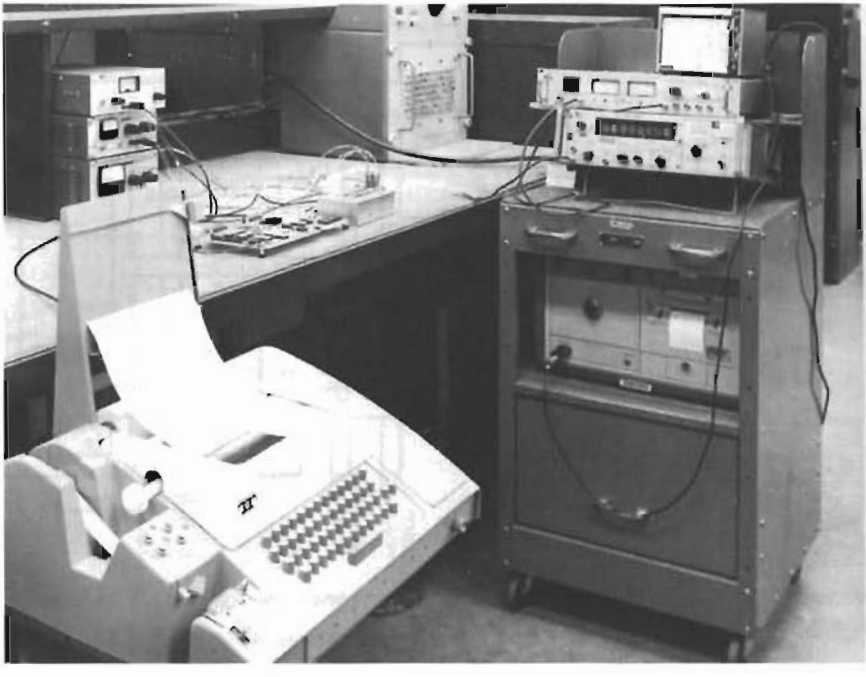


Figure 10-26. Test setup for microprocessor temperature compensation.

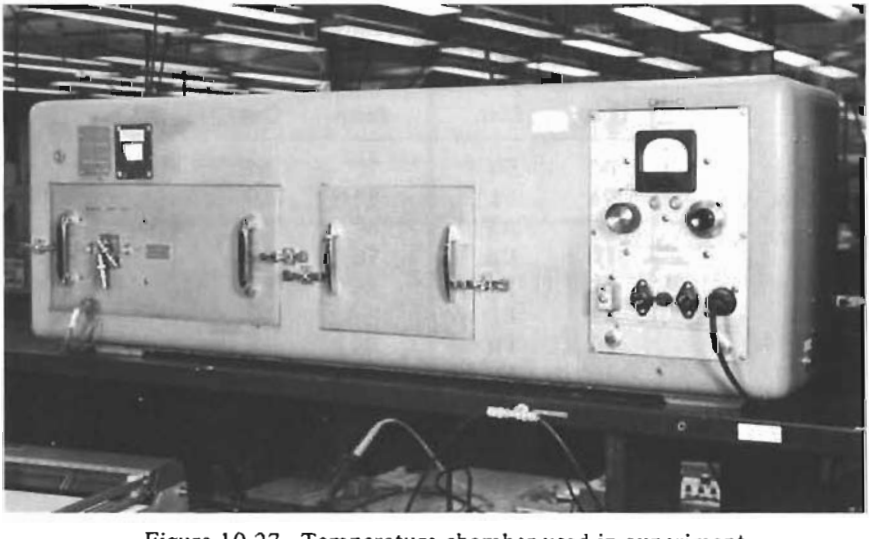


Figure 10-27. Temperature chamber used in experiment.

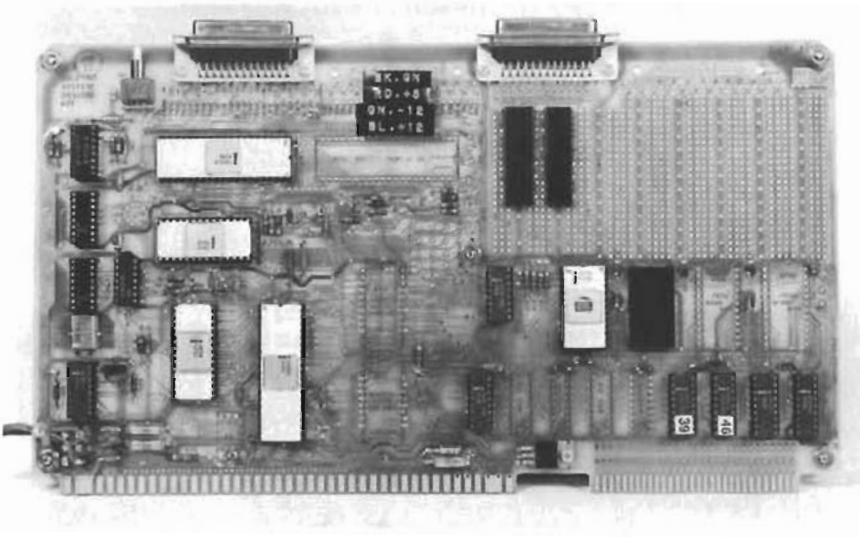


Figure 10-28. Processor used in experiment.

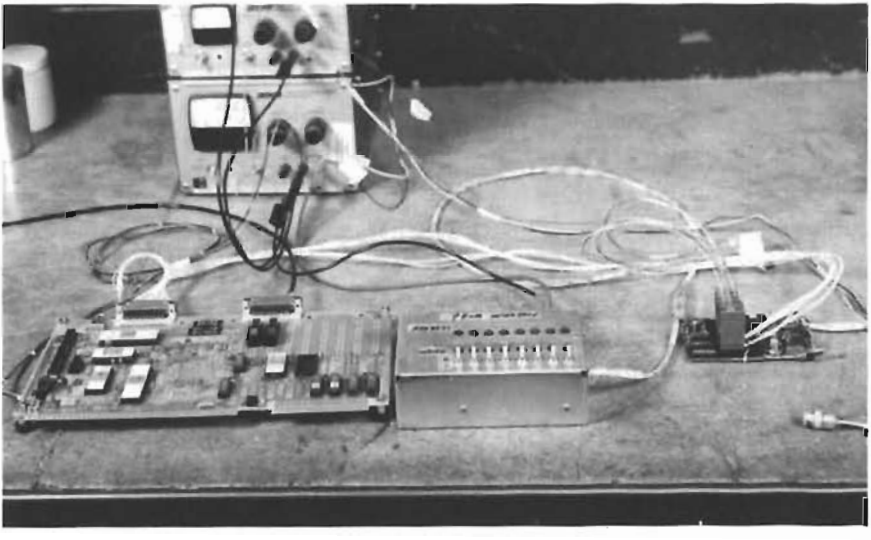


Figure 10-29. Close-up of test fixture and processor.

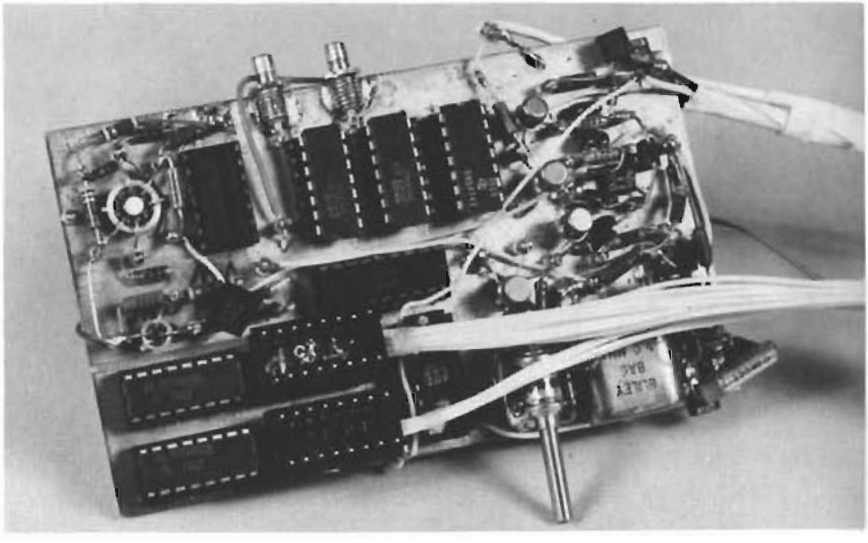


Figure 10-30. Oscillator used in experiment.

Table 10-3. Memory Usage.

Description	Location
Ambient temperature	
least significant byte (LSB)	PIAIA
most significant byte (MSB)	PIAIB
Stored correction data	
T1 (LSB)	DTA
T1 (MSB)	DTA+1
F1	DTA+2
T2 (LSB)	DTA+3
T2 (MSB)	DTA+4
F2 (LSB)	DTA+5
–	
–	
–	
–	
–	
End of file	
FF	DTA+n-1
FF	DTA+n
Correction voltage output	PIAOC

Table 10-4. Internal Memory and Register Usage.[a]

Description	Register/Memory
Ambient temperature	
T(LSB)	RAM
T(MSB)	RAM+1
Output to interpolation program	
TN(LSB)	RAM+3
TN(MSB)	RAM+4
FN	RAM+5
TN+1(LSB)	RAM+6
TN+1(MSB)	RAM+7
FN+1	RAM+8
FN+1-FN[b]	RAM+8
Working registers	
sign of $F_{n+1} - F_n$	RAM+2
dividend $T - T_n$	C
divisor $T_{n+1} - T_n$	D
quotient and multiplier $(T - T_1)/(T_{n+1} - T_n)$	E
multiplicand $(F_{n+1} - F_n)$	A
product	HL
counter for multiplication and division	B
store previous output	RAM+9

[a]A listing of the program is reproduced on the following pages.
[b]F_{n+1} in RAM+8 is destroyed by the program after $F_{n+1} - F_n$ is formed.

The program is loaded beginning at a location called ROM, which for the MCS-80 system was assigned a value 1200 in hexadecimal (H). The first scratch-pad location is called RAM and was assigned a value 1365H. The stored data table begins at a location called DTA and has a value 1300H. The 8255 peripheral interface adapter was wired so that port *A*, designated PIAIA, has an address 14H; port *B*, designated PIAIB, a value 15H; and port *C*, designated PIAOC, an address 16H.

The frequency accuracy of a crystal oscillator which is compensated using microprocessor techniques depends on many of the same factors as other methods of temperature compensation. Among these

```
8080 MACRO ASSEMBLER, VER 2.4          ERRORS = 0 PAGE 1

00001*     1365                        ORG 1365H
00002*     1365          RAM:          DS 9
00003*     1300                        ORG 1300H
00004*     1300          DTA:          DS 75
00005*     0017                        PIACR SET 17H
00006*     0014                        PIAIA SET 14H
00007*     0015                        PIAIB SET 15H
00008*     0016                        PIAOC SET 16H
00009*                                          ;BEGINNING OF LINEAR SEARCH PROGRAM
00010*     1200                        ORG 1200H      ;ADDRESS OF FIRST INSTRUCTION IN PROGRAM
00011*     1200  3E92    ROM:          MVI A,92H ;SET PIA FOR A AND B INPUT, C FOR OUTPUT
00012*     1202  D317                  OUT PIACR ; SET PIA A AND B FOR INPUT, C FOR OUTPUT
00013*     1204  DB14                  IN PIAIA  ; READ IN A PORT OF PIA, LSB OF TEMP
00014*     1206  216513                LXI H,RAM
00015*     1209  77                    MOV M, A
00016*     120A  DB15                  IN PIAIB  ;READ IN B PORT OF PIA, MSB OF TEMP
00017*     120C  23                    INX H
00018*     120D  77                    MOV M,A
00019*     120E  216513                LXI H, RAM
00020*     1211  5E                    MOV E, M
00021*     1212  23                    INX H
00022*     1213  56                    MOV D, M
00023*     1214  210013                LXI H,DTA      ;LOAD ADDRESS OF FIRST STORED COMPENSATION DATA
00024*     1217  7B      LOOP3:        MOV A,E        ;LOAD LSB OF ACTUAL TEMP INTO ACCUMULATOR
00025*     1218  96                    SUB M          ;SUBTRACT T-TN LSB
00026*     1219  47                    MOV B,A
00027*     121A  23                    INX H          ;SET ADDRESS FOR MSB OF STORED TEMP
00028*     121B  7A                    MOV A,D
00029*     121C  9E                    SBB M          ;SUBTRACT MOST SIGNIFICANT BIT OF TEMP T-TN
00030*     121D  DA4012                JC X5         ;RESULT NEG READ OUT STORED POINTS
00031*     1220  CA2612                JZ X15
00032*     1223  C32C12                JMP X14
00033*     1226  78      X15:          MOV A, B
00034*     1227  C600                   ADI 0
00035*     1229  CA3112                JZ X4
00036*     122C  23      X14:          INX H          ;SKIP FREQ CORRECTION
00037*     122D  23                    INX H          ;INCREMENT ADDRESS TO NEXT STORED TEMP POINT
00038*     122E  C31712                JMP LOOP3      ;JUMP BACK TO BEGINNING OF SEARCH ROUTINE
00039*                                                ;THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS WRITE OUT THE FREQ
00040*                                                ;CORRECTION WORD IF THE SENSED TEMPERATURE
00041*                                                ;COINSIDES WITH A STORED TEMPERATURE EXACTLY
00042*     1231  23      X4:           INX H          ;ADVANCE HL TO STORED FREQ CORRECTION
00043*     1232  7E                    MOV A,M
00044*     1233  216E13                 LXI H,RAM+9 ; LOAD ADDRESS OF PREVIOUS OUTPUT
00045*     1236  BE                     CMP M      ; COMPARE WITH PRVIOUS OUTPUT
00046*     1237  CA0412                 JZ ROM+4   ;SKIP PRINT OUT IF OUTPUT SAME AS BEFORE
00047*     123A  77                     MOV M,A    ; STORE NEW OUTPUT IF DIFFERENT
00048*     123B  D316                   OUT PIAOC
00049*     123D  C30412                JMP ROM+4      ;TRANSFER CONTROL TO BEGINNING OF PROGRAM
00050*     1240  2B      X5:           DCX H
```

are hystereses, temperature transients, the inaccuracy in determining temperature, and the inaccuracy in setting analog correction voltage to the desired value. The microprocessor has several advantages over other methods of compensation, however. Since a search for stored correction values can be made, it is reasonable to store points closer together over portions of the temperature range where the crystal has the largest slope. It is also possible to use various algorithms to calculate the correction required between stored points. In this discussion, a linear interpolation is assumed. It is possible, however, to develop algorithms based on more than the two closest stored values, such as fitting the cubic equation of the crystal.

```
8080 MACRO ASSEMBLER, VER 2.4          ERRORS = 0 PAGE 2

00051*  1241  2B              DCX H
00052*  1242  2B              DCX H
00053*  1243  2B              DCX H           ;SET HL TO ADDRESS OF CORRECTION DATA BELOW TEMP
00054*  1244  116B13          LXI D,RAM+3     ;LOAD ADDRESS WHERE DATA TO BE PLACED
00055*  1247  0606            MVI B,6         ;SET B TO TRANSFER 6 BYTES OF DATA
00056*  1249  7E        X6:   MOV A,M         ;READ DATA INTO ACCUMULATOR
00057*  124A  23              INX H           ;INCREMENT SOURCE ADDRESS
00058*  124B  EB              XCHG            ;TRANSFER IN DESTINATION ADDRESS
00059*  124C  77              MOV M,A         ;PLACE DATA AT DESTINATION ADDRESS
00060*  124D  23              INX H           ;INCREMENT DESTINATION ADDRESS
00061*  124E  EB              XCHG            ;SET UP SOURCE ADDRESS
00062*  124F  05              DCR B           ;DECREMENT COUNTER
00063*  1250  C24912          JNZ X6          ;IF TRANSFER COMPLETE, CONINUE
00064*                                      ; BEGINNING OF INTERPOLATION PROGRAM
00065*  1253  216D13    BK1:  LXI H,RAM+5     ;LOAD ADDRESS OF F2
00066*  1256  7E              MOV A,M         ;LOAD F2 INTO ACCUMULATOR
00067*  1257  216A13          LXI H,RAM+2     ;LOAD ADDRESS OF F1
00068*  125A  5F              MOV E,M         ;PLACE F1 IN E
00069*  125B  BB              CMP E           ;COMPARE A-E,I.E. SET CY IF F2 L.T. F1
00070*  125C  DA6712          JC X7           ; JP IF F1 G.T. F2
00071*  125F  216713          LXI H,RAM+2     ;LOAD ADDRESS OF FLAG
00072*  1262  3600            MVI M,0         ;SIGN BIT 0 IF F1 L.T. F2
00073*  1264  C34F12          JMP X8          ;SKIP INTERCHANGE IF  F1 L.T. F2
00074*  1267  57        X7:   MOV D,A         ;INTERCHANGE E AND A
00075*  1268  7B              MOV A,E
00076*  1269  5A              MOV E,D
00077*  126A  216713          LXI H,RAM+2     ;SET UP ADDRESS OF SIGN FLAG
00078*  126D  36FF            MVI M,0FFH      ;SINCE F2-F1 IS NEG SET FLAG
00079*  126F  93        X8:   SUB E           ;FORM ABS F2-F1
00080*  1270  216D13          LXI H,RAM+8     ;SET UP ADDRESS TO STORE ABS F2-F1
00081*  1273  77              MOV M,A         ;STORE DIFFERENCE
00082*  1274  216513          LXI H,RAM       ;SET UP ADDRESS OF T LSB
00083*  1277  7E              MOV A,M         ;ACCUMULATOR HOLDS LSB OF T
00084*  1278  216B13          LXI H,RAM+3     ;SET UP ADDRESS OF T1 LSB
00085*  127B  96              SUB M           ;FORM T-T1
00086*  127C  4F        X16:  MOV C,A         ;SET UP ADDRESS OF T2 LSB
00087*  127D  216B13          LXI H,RAM+6     ;T2 LSB IN ACC
00088*  1280  7E              MOV A,M         ;SET UP ADDRESS OF T1 LSB
00089*  1281  216B13          LXI H,RAM+3     ;ACCUMULATOR HOLDS T2-T1
00090*  1284  96              SUB M
00091*  1285  57        X17:  MOV D,A
00092*                                      ;THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS CONTAIN
00093*                                      ;THE 8 BIT DIVISION PROGRAM
00094*  1286  1E00      BK2:  MVI E,0         ;INITIALIZE QUITENT TO ZERO
00095*  1288  0609            MVI B,9H        ;SET UP COUNTER FOR 8 SHIFTS
00096*  128A  79        X11:  MOV A,C         ;PLACE DIVIDEND IN ACC LSB
00097*  128B  92              SUB D           ;TRY SUBTRACTION
00098*  128C  DA9812          JC X9           ;JUMP IF SUBTRACTION UNSUCCESSFUL
00099*  128F  17              RAL             ;SHIFT DIVIDEND
00100*  1290  4F              MOV C,A         ;MOVE SHIFTED DIVIDENT BACK TO C
00101*  1291  7B              MOV A,E
```

For this discussion, let the frequency error at any given temperature be represented by

$$E = St_{\text{lsb}} + \frac{F}{2^b} + \delta \text{ ppm} \tag{10-30}$$

where

E is the overall frequency error in parts per million;
S is the maximum slope of the frequency–temperature curve of the oscillator in parts per million per Celsius degree;
t_{lsb} is the temperature range represented by the least significant bit of the digital temperature input;
F is the total frequency pulling range of the varactor;

```
8080 MACRO ASSEMBLER, VER 2.4          ERRORS = 0 PAGE 3

 00102*    1292  37              STC             ;SET CARRY
 00103*    1293  17              RAL             ;ROTATE CARRY INTO QUOTENT
 00104*    1294  5F              MOV E,A         ;MOVE QUOTENT BACK TO E
 00105*    1295  C3A012          JMP X10
 00106*    1298  79        X9:   MOV A,C         ;MOV C INTO ACC TO RESTORE
 00107*    1299  3F              CMC             ;COMPLEMENT CARRY I.E. SET CY=0
 00108*    129A  17              RAL             ; ROTATE DIVIDEND
 00109*    129B  4F              MOV C,A         ;RESTORE LSB OF DIVIDEND
 00110*    129C  AF              XRA A           ;CLEAR CARRY
 00111*    129D  7B              MOV A,E         ;PLACE QUOTENT IN ACC
 00112*    129E  17              RAL             ;ROTATE ZERO INTO QUOTENT
 00113*    129F  5F              MOV E,A         ;REPLACE ROTATED QUOTENT IN E
 00114*    12A0  05        X10:  DCR B           ;DECREMENT COUNTER
 00115*    12A1  C2AA12          JNZ X11         ;PROCEED WITH NEW SUBTRACTION
 00116*                          ;THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS PERFORM A 16X8
 00117*                          ;BIT MULTIPLICATION
 00118*    12A4  1600      BK3:  MVI D,0         ;SET MSB MULTIPLICAND TO ZERO
 00119*    12A6  216D13          LXI H,RAM+8     ;SET UP ADDRESS OF F2-F1
 00120*    12A9  7E              MOV A,M         ;MOV F2-F1 INTO ACCUMULATOR
 00121*    12AA  210000          LXI H,0         ;INITIALIZE PRODUCT TO ZERO
 00122*    12AD  0608            MVI B,8         ;SET UP CONTROL LOOP FOR 8 OPERATIONS
 00123*    12AF  29        LOOP: DAD H           ;SHIFT PARTIAL PRODUCT LEFT AND INTO CARRY
 00124*    12B0  17              RAL             ;ROTATE MULTIPLIER BIT TO CARRY
 00125*    12B1  D2B712          JNC DEC         ;TEST MULTIPLIER AT CARRY
 00126*    12B4  19              DAD D           ;ADD MULTIPLICAND TO PARTIAL PRODUCT IF CY=1
 00127*    12B5  CE00            ACI 0           ;ADD CARRY
 00128*    12B7  05        DEC:  DCR B           ;DECREMENT B LOOP COUNTER
 00129*    12B8  C2AF12          JNZ LOOP        ;REPEAT IF NOT 8 TIMES
 00130*    12BB  EB              XCHG            ;PLACE PRODUCT IN DE
 00131*    12BC  216713          LXI H, RAM+2    ;LOAD ADDRESS OF SIGN
 00132*    12BF  AF              XRA A           ;CLEAR A
 00133*    12C0  86              ADD M           ;BRING SIGN BIT INTO ACC
 00134*    12C1  FACC12          JM X13          ;JUMP IF NEGATIVE PRODUCT
 00135*    12C4  216A13          LXI H,RAM+5     ;LOAD ADDRESS OF F1
 00136*    12C7  7E              MOV A,M         ;F1 TO ACCUMULATOR
 00137*    12C8  82              ADD D           ;FORM CORRECTION
 00138*    12C9  C3D112          JMP X12         ;GO TO READ OUT INSTRUCTIONS
 00139*    12CC  216A13    X13:  LXI H,RAM+5     ;LOAD ADDRESS OF F1
 00140*    12CF  7E              MOV A,M         ;F1 IN ACC
 00141*    12D0  92              SUB D           ;FORM CORRECTION
 00142*    12D1  216E13    X12:   LXI H,RAM+9 ; LOAD ADDRESS OF PREVIOUS OUTPUT
 00143*    12D4  BE               CMP M     ; COMPARE WITH PREVIOUS OUTPUT
 00144*    12D5  CAD912           JZ ROM+4  ;SKIP PRINT OUT IF OUTPUT SAME AS BEFORE
 00145*    12D8  77               MOV M,A   ; STORE NEW OUTPUT IF DIFFERENT
 00146*    12D9  D316             OUT PIAOC
 00147*    12DB  C30412    BK4:  JMP ROM+4       ;START OVER
 00148*                          END
NO PROGRAM ERRORS
```

b is the number of bits in the digital correction word; and

δ is the error resulting from the spacing between stored correction values.

If a linear interpolation program is used, the error δ is the difference between the actual crystal curve and a straight line joining the two nearest stored correction values.

It is assumed here that a linear modulator is used so that the correction voltage is proportional to the frequency correction required.

It is well known that the frequency–temperature curve for a quartz crystal is a cubic equation of the form

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f} = A_1 X + A_2 X^2 + A_3 X^3 \text{ ppu} \qquad (10\text{-}31)$$

```
8080 MACRO ASSEMBLER, VER 2.0          ERRORS = 0 PAGE 4

                    SYMBOL TABLE

* 01

A       0007    B       0000    BK1     1253 *  BK2     1286 *
BK3     12A4 *  BK4     12DB *  C       0001    D       0002
DEC     1287    DIA     1300    E       0003    H       0004
L       0005    LOOP    12AF    LOOP2   1217    M       0006
PIACH   0017    PIAIA   0014    PIAIB   0015    PIAOC   0016
PSW     0006    RAM     1365    ROM     1200    SP      0006
X10     12A0    X11     12BA    X12     12D1    X13     12CC
X14     122C    X15     1226    X16     127C *  X17     1285 *
X4      1231    X5      1240    X6      1249    X7      1267
X8      126F    X9      1298
```

where $X = t - t_0$. The coefficients vary slightly with the crystal parameters and a comprehensive listing is given by Bechmann in ref. 4. From this reference one set of values for plated resonators using natural quartz are given below. For a fundamental-mode AT-cut crystal,

$$A_1 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-5.15 \times 10^{-6}) \tag{10-32}$$

$$A_2 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-4.5 \times 10^{-9}) - 0.1 \times 10^{-9} \tag{10-33}$$

$$A_3 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-20 \times 10^{-12}) + 130 \times 10^{-12} \tag{10-34}$$

where ANG is the angle in degrees of arc from the angle of cut to give a zero slope at t_0. (The term t is the temperature in Celsius degrees and t_0 is taken to be 20°C.)

For a third overtone AT-cut crystal,

$$A_1 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-5.15 \times 10^{-6}) \tag{10-35}$$

$$A_2 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-4.5 \times 10^{-9}) - 1.7 \times 10^{-9} \tag{10-36}$$

$$A_3 \doteq 105 \times 10^{-12} \tag{10-37}$$

and for a fifth overtone,

$$A_1 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-5.5 \times 10^{-6}) \tag{10-38}$$

$$A_2 \doteq (\text{ANG})\,(-4.5 \times 10^{-9}) - 1.2 \times 10^{-9} \tag{10-39}$$

$$A_3 \doteq 105 \times 10^{-12} \tag{10-40}$$

If we substitute $X = t - 20$ into equation (10-31) we obtain

$$\frac{\Delta f(t)}{f} = b_1 t + b_2 t^2 + b_3 t^3 + b_4 \tag{10-41}$$

where

$$b_1 = A_1 - 40A_2 + 1200A_3 \tag{10-42}$$

$$b_2 = A_2 - 60A_3 \tag{10-43}$$

$$b_3 = A_3 \tag{10-44}$$

$$b_4 = 400A_2 - 20A_1 - 8000A_3. \tag{10-45}$$

The microprocessor uses a linear interpolation algorithm of the form

$$f(t_1) + \frac{f(t_2) - f(t_1)}{(t_2 - t_1)}(t - t_1), \tag{10-46}$$

and the frequency error over the interval t_1 to t_2 is given by the difference between equations (10-41) and (10-46) and is

$$\delta = f(t) - f(t_1) - \frac{[f(t_2) - f(t_1)](t - t_1)}{(t_2 - t_1)}. \tag{10-47}$$

It is convenient in dealing with this equation to perform a coordinate transformation, as shown in Figure 10-31. Using the dotted axes we have

$$F(T) = f(t) - f(t_1) \quad \text{and} \quad T = t - t_1.$$

The equation (10-41) becomes

$$F(T) = b_1(T + t_1) + b_2(T + t_1)^2 + b_3(T + t_1)^3 + b_4 - f(t_1). \tag{10-48}$$

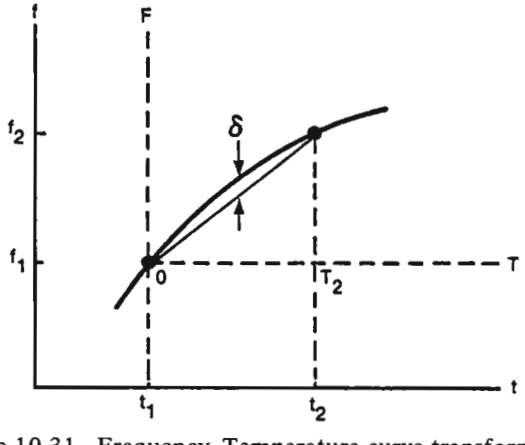


Figure 10-31. Frequency-Temperature curve transformation.

Expanding and simplifying gives

$$F(T) = (b_1 + 2b_2t_1 + 3b_3t_1^2)\,T + (b_2 + 3b_3t_1)\,T^2 + b_3T^3. \quad (10\text{-}49)$$

We may then write equation (10-47) as

$$\delta = F(T) - \frac{F(T_2)\,T}{T_2}, \qquad 0 \leqslant T \leqslant T_2. \quad (10\text{-}50)$$

Substituting from equation (10-49) we have

$$\delta = (b_1 + 2b_2t_1 + 3b_3t_1^2)\,T + (b_2 + 3b_3t_1)\,T^2 + b_3T^3 - [(b_1 + 2b_2t_1 + 3b_3t_1^2)\,T_2 + (b_2 + 3b_3t_1)\,T_2^2 + b_3T_2^3]\frac{T}{T_2}, \quad (10\text{-}51)$$

which can be simplified to

$$\delta = -(b_2T_2 + 3b_3t_1T_2 + b_3T_2^2)\,T + (b_2 + 3b_3t_1)\,T^2 + b_3T^3. \quad (10\text{-}52)$$

Obviously, $\delta = 0$ at $T = 0$ and $T = T_2$ because of the way the expression for δ was constructed. A maximum or minimum occurs near the center of the interval and is found by setting $d\delta/dT = 0$.

Let

$$K_1 = -(b_2T_2 + 3b_3t_1T_2 + b_3T_2^2) \quad (10\text{-}53)$$

$$K_2 = (b_2 + 3b_3t_1). \quad (10\text{-}54)$$

Then

$$\delta = K_1T + K_2T^2 + b_3T^3 \quad (10\text{-}55)$$

$$\frac{d\delta}{dT} = K_1 + 2K_2T + 3b_3T^2. \quad (10\text{-}56)$$

Setting this expression to zero and solving for T gives

$$T = -\frac{2K_2 \pm \sqrt{4K_2^2 - 12b_3K_1}}{6b_3} \quad (10\text{-}57)$$

$$T = \frac{-K_2\left[1 \mp \sqrt{1 - (3b_3K_1/K_2^2)}\right]}{3b_3}. \quad (10\text{-}58)$$

However, if the intervals are small so that

$$\left|\frac{3K_1b_3}{K_2^2}\right| = \left|\frac{-3b_3(b_2T_2 + 3b_3t_1T_2 + b_3T_2^2)}{(b_2 + 3b_3t_1)^2}\right| \ll 1 \quad (10\text{-}59)$$

we may expand $\sqrt{1 - (3b_3K_1/K_2^2)}$ using the binomial series and retain only the first two terms; thus

$$(1 + m)^\alpha \doteq 1 + \alpha m \qquad \text{for} \qquad m \ll 1$$

and equation (10-58) becomes

$$T = \frac{-K_2}{3b_3}\left(1 - 1 + \frac{3b_3K_1}{2K_2^2}\right) \tag{10-60}$$

$$T = -\frac{K_1}{2K_2}. \tag{10-61}$$

Now substituting from (10-53) and (10-54)

$$T = \frac{b_2T_2 + 3b_3t_1T_2 + b_3T_2^2}{2(b_2 + 3b_3t_1)}. \tag{10-62}$$

If the temperature interval is small as previously assumed,

$$(b_2 + 3b_3t_1) \gg b_3T_2 \quad \text{and} \quad T \doteq \frac{T_2(b_2 + 3b_3t_1)}{2(b_2 + 3b_3t_1)} = \frac{T_2}{2}. \tag{10-63}$$

Thus the maximum error occurs in the center of the temperature interval. Substituting this into equation (10-52) gives:

$$\delta_{max} = -(b_2T_2 + 3b_3t_1T_2 + b_3T_2^2)\frac{T_2}{2} + (b_2 + 3b_3t_1)\frac{T_2^2}{4} + \frac{b_3T_2^3}{8}, \tag{10-64}$$

which may be simplified to

$$\delta_{max} = \frac{-T_2^2}{4}\left[\frac{3}{2}b_3T_2 + b_2 + 3b_3t_1\right]. \tag{10-65}$$

Values of δ_{max} are given in Table 10-5 for temperature intervals of 3°C, 6°C, and 10°C using a typical TCXO crystal with ANG = 7 minutes of arc (0.1167 deg). Then from equations (10-32) to (10-34) and (10-42) to (10-45) we have

$$b_1 = -4.228 \times 10^{-7}$$

$$b_2 = -8.287 \times 10^{-9}$$

Table 10-5. Maximum Tracking Error for Stored Temperature Intervals of 3°C, 6°C, and 10°C.

Ambient temp. t_1 (°C)	δ_{max} (ppm)		
	$T_2 = 3°C$	$T_2 = 6°C$	$T_2 = 10°C$
-55	0.0648	0.254	0.686
-30	0.0432	0.167	0.447
-15	0.0303	0.116	0.303
0	0.0174	0.0642	0.159
10	0.0087	0.0298	0.0635
15	0.0044	0.0125	0.0157
25	-0.0042	-0.0219	-0.0800
50	-0.0257	-0.108	-0.319
65	-0.0387	-0.167	-0.463
80	-0.0516	-0.212	-0.607
95	-0.0645	-0.263	-0.750

$$b_3 = 1.2766 \times 10^{-10}$$

$$b_4 = 1.074 \times 10^{-5}.$$

It is possible, of course, to use the microprocessor to calculate the frequency correction directly from the cubic equation of the crystal or to use other algorithms taking advantage of more than the two nearest stored correction values. These methods may be used in connection with a fine-correction lookup table to compensate for minor irregularities in the crystal curve.

Temperature compensation using microprocessors is subject to the same ultimate limitations on accuracy as the digital method of compensation, namely temperature transients and frequency hysteresis. At the time of this writing the limit is about ±5 parts in 10^8 for an AT-cut crystal, because of hysteresis. As better crystals are developed it will be possible to make additional improvements in the compensation accuracy by the addition of more bits in the temperature and frequency correction words.

Research to improve the accuracy of TCXOs has been carried out in various laboratories for over two decades and will no doubt continue for some years to come. The requirement for highly accurate

frequency and time standards which are also low-cost, low-power, and small in size is considerable, and promises many benefits to a broad spectrum of the electronics industry, including both military and commercial areas as well as in data processing and transmission equipment. Many techniques remain to be tried, and the use of microprocessors will no doubt play an important roll in implementing many of them.

Appendix A

Derivation of the Complex Equation for Oscillation

Using the block diagram of Figure A-1, in which the active element is represented by its Y-parameters and the feedback network by its Z-parameters, the complex equation for oscillation can be derived. By the definition of Y-parameters, the currents and voltages of the active device can be described by the following equations:

$$I = y_{11} V + y_{12} V' \tag{A-1}$$

$$I' = y_{21} V + y_{22} V'. \tag{A-2}$$

Also by definition, the currents and voltages of the feedback network can be described by the equations:

$$V' = -Z_{11} I' - Z_{12} I \tag{A-3}$$

$$V = -Z_{21} I' - Z_{22} I. \tag{A-4}$$

Arranging the equations symmetrically,

$$V y_{11} + V' y_{12} - I + 0I' = 0 \tag{A-5}$$

$$V y_{21} + V' y_{22} + 0I - I' = 0 \tag{A-6}$$

$$0V + V' + I Z_{12} + I' Z_{11} = 0 \tag{A-7}$$

$$V + 0V' + I Z_{22} + I' Z_{21} = 0. \tag{A-8}$$

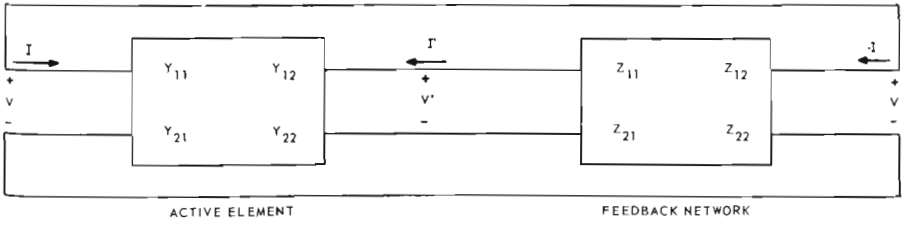


Figure A-1. General oscillator: block diagram.

Solving these equations for V using determinants,

$$V = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 0 & y_{12} & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & y_{22} & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & Z_{12} & Z_{11} \\ 0 & 0 & Z_{22} & Z_{21} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & -1 & 0 \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & Z_{12} & Z_{11} \\ 1 & 0 & Z_{22} & Z_{21} \end{vmatrix}}. \tag{A-9}$$

It will be seen that the numerator of this expression is zero, making $V = 0$ for every case except that for which the denominator also is zero; in that case, V is indeterminate. We know, however, that if oscillation takes place, $V \neq 0$, and therefore it must be true that

$$\begin{vmatrix} y_{11} & y_{12} & -1 & 0 \\ y_{21} & y_{22} & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & Z_{12} & Z_{11} \\ 1 & 0 & Z_{22} & Z_{21} \end{vmatrix} = 0. \tag{A-10}$$

Solving this determinant gives the equation:

$$y_{21}Z_{21} + y_{11}Z_{22} + y_{22}Z_{11} + y_{12}Z_{12} + \Delta y \Delta Z + 1 = 0 \tag{A-11}$$

where

$$\Delta y = y_{11}y_{22} - y_{21}y_{12}$$
$$\Delta Z = Z_{11}Z_{22} - Z_{21}Z_{12}.$$

This equation is quite general and may be applied to almost any oscillator. If we choose, we may represent the active device by Y-parameters and the feedback network by Z-parameters or vice versa. It is usually more convenient to use the former, however.

It should be pointed out that the use of the two-port parameters implies that the circuits are linear. At large-signal amplitudes, the Y-parameters therefore must be defined as the ratios of fundamental components of current to fundamental components of voltage.

In working with transistors, it may be convenient to use the convention $y_{11} = y_i$, $y_{21} = y_f$, $y_{12} = y_r$, and $y_{22} = y_o$, which conforms to present usage on transistor data sheets. Making the same transition in the Z-parameter gives equation

(A-11) as

$$y_f Z_f + y_i Z_o + y_o Z_i + y_r Z_r + \Delta y \Delta Z + 1 = 0, \qquad \text{(A-12)}$$

where

$$\Delta y = y_i y_o - y_f y_r$$

$$\Delta Z = Z_i Z_o - Z_f Z_r,$$

which is the form used throughout this book. [Equation (A-12) is presented and discussed at some length in reference 41.]

Appendix B

Derivation of *Y*-Parameter Equations for the Pierce Oscillator

The Pierce oscillator can be represented by the schematic diagram of Figure B-1.

Let the circuit be redrawn and the transistor replaced by a four-terminal network described by its *Y*-parameters. The diagram of Figure B-2 then results.

If the transistor is represented by its *Y*-parameters, then the feedback network must be represented by its *Z*-parameters if equation (A-12) is to be used. For this analysis, it is convenient to include the load resistance R_L in the output admittance of the transistor. This is accomplished by using a value of y_{oe} which is equal to y_{oe} (transistor) + $1/R_L$. Also, the input capacity of the transistor will be lumped in parallel with C_1, thus making $y_{ie} = g_{ie}$ purely resistive in the analysis. In like manner, the output capacity of the transistor will be

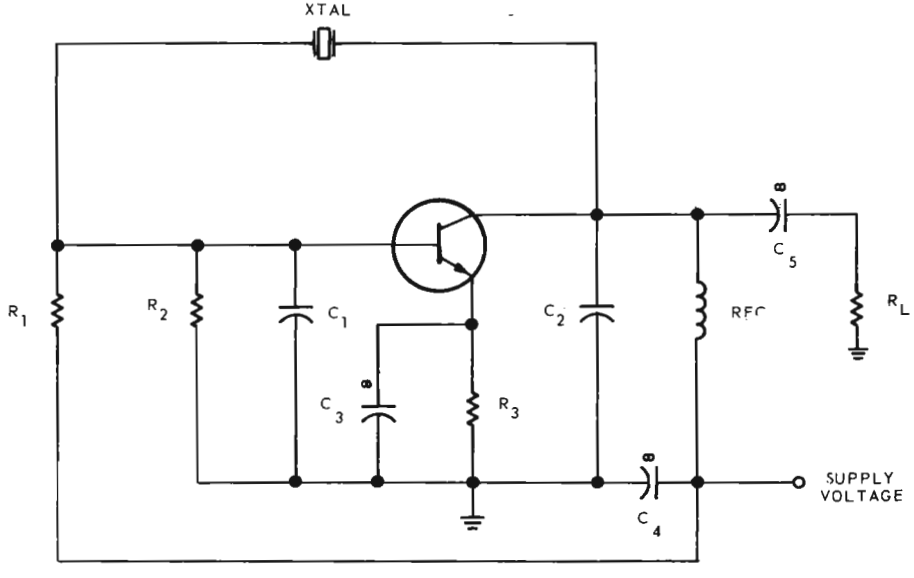


Figure B-1. Pierce oscillator: schematic diagram.

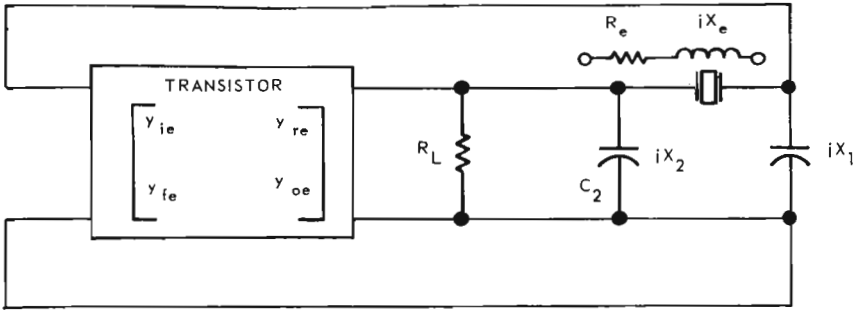


Figure B-2. Pierce oscillator: ac circuit diagram.

lumped in parallel with C_2, making $y_{oe} = g_{oe}$ purely resistive. In the analysis it will be assumed that the reverse transfer admittance of the transistor is purely imaginary: $y_{re} = jb_{re}$.

The remaining π-network is shown in Figure B-3.

From this circuit the Z-parameters can be calculated using the following definitions:

Input impedance
$$Z_i = \left.\frac{V_1}{I_1}\right|_{I_2=0} \tag{B-1}$$

Output impedance
$$Z_o = \left.\frac{V_2}{I_2}\right|_{I_1=0} \tag{B-2}$$

Forward transfer impedance
$$Z_f = \left.\frac{V_2}{I_1}\right|_{I_2=0} \tag{B-3}$$

Reverse transfer impedance
$$Z_r = \left.\frac{V_1}{I_2}\right|_{I_1=0} \tag{B-4}$$

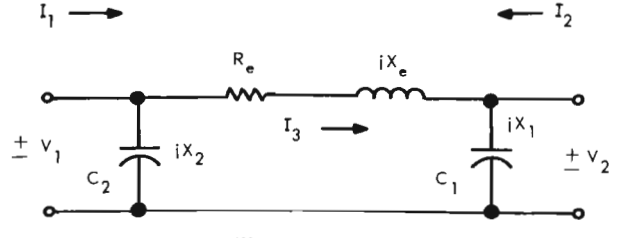


Figure B-3. Pierce oscillator: π-network: simplified diagram.

From equation (B-1) it can be seen that Z_i is merely the input impedance of the network with the output open-circuited and can be written by inspection as

$$Z_i = \frac{jx_2(R_e + jx_e + jx_1)}{jx_2 + (R_e + jx_e + jx_1)}. \tag{B-5}$$

If we let

$$Z = R_e + j(x_1 + x_2 + x_e) \tag{B-6}$$

we have

$$Z_i = \frac{1}{Z} jx_2(R_e + jx_e + jx_1) \tag{B-7}$$

$$Z_i = -\frac{1}{Z}(x_1x_2 + x_2x_e - jR_ex_2). \tag{B-8}$$

By symmetry, we may write:

$$Z_o = -\frac{1}{Z}[x_1x_2 + x_1x_e - jR_ex_1]. \tag{B-9}$$

The forward transfer impedance is given by the ratio of V_2 to I_1 with the output open-circuited. In order to calculate this, it is convenient to first determine I_3 in terms of I_1, which is given by

$$I_3 = \frac{I_1(jx_2)}{(R_e + jx_e + jx_1) + jx_2} \tag{B-10}$$

$$I_3 = \frac{I_1(jx_2)}{Z} \tag{B-11}$$

and

$$V_2 = I_3(jx_1); \tag{B-12}$$

therefore,

$$V_2 = \frac{I_1(jx_2)}{Z} jx_1 \tag{B-13}$$

and

$$\frac{V_2}{I_1} = \frac{-x_1x_2}{Z} = Z_f. \tag{B-14}$$

Since the π-network is composed entirely of reciprocal elements, the forward and reverse transfer impedances are equal, so that

$$Z_f = Z_r = \frac{-x_1 x_2}{Z}. \tag{B-15}$$

In using equation (A-12) the quantity ΔZ must be used. It is given by

$$\Delta Z = Z_i Z_o - Z_f Z_r \tag{B-16}$$

$$\Delta Z = -\frac{1}{Z}(x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_e - jR_e x_2)\left(-\frac{1}{Z}\right)(x_1 x_2 + x_1 x_e - jR_e x_1) - \left(-\frac{x_1 x_2}{Z}\right)\left(-\frac{x_1 x_2}{Z}\right) \tag{B-17}$$

$$\Delta Z = \frac{1}{Z^2}[(x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_e)(x_1 x_2 + x_1 x_e) - j(x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_e)R_e x_1 - j(x_1 x_2 + x_1 x_e)R_e x_2 - R_e^2 x_1 x_2] - \frac{x_1^2 x_2^2}{Z^2} \tag{B-18}$$

$$\Delta Z = \frac{1}{Z^2}(x_1^2 x_2^2 + x_1^2 x_2 x_e + x_2^2 x_1 x_e + x_1 x_2 x_e^2 - jR_e x_1^2 x_2 - jR_e x_1 x_2 x_e - jR_e x_1 x_2^2 - jR_e x_1 x_2 x_e - R_e^2 x_1 x_2 - x_1^2 x_2^2) \tag{B-19}$$

$$\Delta Z = \frac{1}{Z^2}\{R_e x_1 x_2[-R_e - j(x_2 + x_e + x_1)] + jx_1 x_2 x_e[-R_e - jx_1 - jx_2 - jx_e]\} \tag{B-20}$$

$$\Delta Z = -\frac{1}{Z}(R_e x_1 x_2 + jx_1 x_2 x_e) \tag{B-21}$$

$$\Delta Z = -\frac{x_1 x_2}{Z}(R_e + jx_e). \tag{B-22}$$

Summarizing these results, we have

$$Z_i = -\frac{1}{Z}(x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_e - jR_e x_2) \tag{B-23}$$

$$Z_f = Z_r = -\frac{x_1 x_2}{Z} \tag{B-24}$$

$$Z_o = -\frac{1}{Z}(x_1x_2 + x_1x_e - jR_ex_1) \tag{B-25}$$

$$\Delta Z = -\frac{x_1x_2}{Z}(R_e + jx_e), \tag{B-26}$$

where

$$Z = R_e + j(x_1 + x_2 + x_e). \tag{B-27}$$

These results can be substituted in the general equation for oscillation as developed in appendix A.

$$y_{fe}Z_f + y_{ie}Z_o + y_{oe}Z_i + y_{re}Z_r + \Delta y\Delta Z + 1 = 0 \tag{B-28}$$

$$-y_{fe}\frac{(x_1x_2)}{Z} - y_{ie}\frac{(x_1x_2 + x_1x_e - jR_ex_1)}{Z} - y_{oe}\frac{(x_1x_2 + x_2x_e - jR_ex_2)}{Z}$$

$$-y_{re}\frac{(x_1x_2)}{Z} - \Delta y\frac{(x_1x_2)(R_e + jx_e)}{Z} + 1 = 0. \tag{B-29}$$

Multiplying by $-Z$ gives

$$y_{fe}x_1x_2 + y_{ie}(x_1x_2 + x_1x_e - jR_ex_1) + y_{oe}(x_1x_2 + x_2x_e - jR_ex_2)$$

$$+ y_{re}x_1x_2 + \Delta yx_1x_2(R_e + jx_e) - Z = 0. \tag{B-30}$$

Making the substitutions:

$$y_{fe} = g_{fe} + jb_{fe}, \quad y_{ie} = g_{ie}, \quad y_{oe} = g_{oe}, \quad y_{re} = jb_{re},$$

and

$$\Delta y = (y_{ie}y_{oe} - y_{fe}y_{re}) = g_{ie}g_{oe} - jb_{re}(g_{fe} + jb_{fe}),$$

and for Z results in the equation

$$\begin{aligned}&(g_{fe} + jb_{fe})x_1x_2 + g_{ie}(x_1x_2 + x_1x_e - jR_ex_1)\\ &+ g_{oe}(x_1x_2 + x_2x_e - jR_ex_2) + jb_{re}x_1x_2\\ &+ [g_{ie}g_{oe} - jb_{re}(g_{fe} + jb_{fe})]\,x_1x_2(R_e + jx_e)\\ &-R_e - j(x_1 + x_2 + x_e) = 0,\end{aligned} \tag{B-31}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}&g_{fe}x_1x_2 + jb_{fe}x_1x_2 + g_{ie}x_1x_2 + g_{ie}x_1x_e - jg_{ie}R_ex_1\\ &+ g_{oe}x_1x_2 + g_{oe}x_2x_e - jg_{oe}R_ex_2 + jb_{re}x_1x_2\\ &+ g_{ie}g_{oe}x_1x_2R_e + jg_{ie}g_{oe}x_1x_2x_e - jb_{re}g_{fe}x_1x_2R_e\end{aligned}$$

$$+ b_{re}g_{fe}x_1x_2x_e + b_{re}b_{fe}x_1x_2R_e + jb_{re}b_{fe}x_1x_2x_e$$
$$- R_e - j(x_1 + x_2 + x_e) = 0. \quad \text{(B-32)}$$

The equation can be separated into real and imaginary components. The real parts of the equation are

$$g_{fe}x_1x_2 + g_{ie}x_1(x_2 + x_e) + g_{oe}x_2(x_1 + x_e) + R_ex_1x_2(g_{ie}g_{oe} + b_{fe}b_{re})$$
$$+ g_{fe}b_{re}x_1x_2x_e - R_e = 0. \quad \text{(B-33)}$$

The imaginary parts are

$$-x_1 - x_2 - x_e + (b_{fe} + b_{re})x_1x_2 + g_{ie}g_{oe}x_1x_2x_e - R_e(g_{ie}x_1 + g_{oe}x_2)$$
$$+ b_{re}b_{fe}x_1x_2x_e - g_{fe}b_{re}x_1x_2R_e = 0. \quad \text{(B-34)}$$

Rewriting these equations and separating the primary and secondary effects gives

$$g_{fe}x_1x_2 = R_e + K_1 \quad \text{(B-35)}$$

and

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_e = 0 + K_2, \quad \text{(B-36)}$$

where

$$K_1 = -g_{ie}x_1(x_2 + x_e) - g_{oe}x_2(x_1 + x_e)$$
$$-R_ex_1x_2(g_{ie}g_{oe} + b_{fe}b_{re})$$
$$- g_{fe}b_{re}x_1x_2x_e,$$

and

$$K_2 = (b_{fe} + b_{re})x_1x_2 + g_{ie}g_{oe}x_1x_2x_e$$
$$- R_e(g_{ie}x_1 + g_{oe}x_2) + b_{re}b_{fe}x_1x_2x_e$$
$$- g_{fe}b_{re}x_1x_2R_e.$$

If we assume that K_2 is zero, then

$$x_e = -(x_1 + x_2) \quad \text{(B-37)}$$

or

$$x_e = \frac{1}{\omega C_1} + \frac{1}{\omega C_2}. \quad \text{(B-38)}$$

Let T be some parameter which causes C_1 to vary with a rate $\partial C_1/\partial T$, and C_2 with a rate $\partial C_2/\partial T$. It is assumed here that C_1 and C_2 include the transistor

input and output capacitances which are primarily responsible for the changes in C_1 and C_2. Then

$$\frac{\partial C_1}{\partial T} \doteq \frac{\partial C_{in}}{\partial T} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial C_2}{\partial T} \doteq \frac{\partial C_{out}}{\partial T}.$$

Differentiating equation (B-38) gives

$$\frac{\partial x_e}{\partial T} = -\frac{1}{\omega C_1^2}\left(\frac{\partial C_1}{\partial T}\right) - \frac{1}{\omega C_2^2}\left(\frac{\partial C_2}{\partial T}\right). \tag{B-39}$$

Also, from equation (B-35), if we assume that K_1 is zero, $C_1 = g_{fe}/R_e C_2 \omega^2$. Putting this in equation B-39 gives

$$\frac{\partial x_e}{\partial T} = -\left[\frac{R_e^2 C_2^2 \omega^3}{g_{fe}^2}\left(\frac{\partial C_1}{\partial T}\right)\right] - \left[\frac{1}{\omega C_2^2}\left(\frac{\partial C_2}{\partial T}\right)\right]. \tag{B-40}$$

If this expression is minimized for C_2, then

$$\frac{\partial(\partial x_e/\partial T)}{\partial C_2} = -\frac{2R_e^2 C_2 \omega^3}{g_{fe}^2}\left(\frac{\partial C_1}{\partial T}\right) + \frac{2}{\omega C_2^3}\left(\frac{\partial C_2}{\partial T}\right) = 0. \tag{B-41}$$

Solving this for C_2 gives

$$C_2^4 = \frac{(\partial C_2/\partial T)}{(\partial C_1/\partial T)} \times \frac{g f_e^2}{\omega^4 R_e^2}. \tag{B-42}$$

In a similar manner, it can be shown that

$$C_1^4 = \frac{(\partial C_1/\partial T)}{(\partial C_2/\partial T)} \times \frac{g f_e^2}{\omega^4 R_e^2}. \tag{B-43}$$

Dividing equation (B-42) by (B-43) gives

$$\left(\frac{C_2}{C_1}\right)^4 = \frac{(\partial C_2/\partial T)^2}{(\partial C_1/\partial T)^2} \tag{B-44}$$

or

$$\frac{C_2}{C_1} = \left(\frac{\partial C_2/\partial T}{\partial C_1/\partial T}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{B-45}$$

This minimizes the frequency change with respect to some parameter T provided the assumption $K_1 = K_2 = 0$ is valid.

A close examination of equation (B-41) shows that the condition

$$\frac{\partial(\partial x_e/\partial T)}{\partial C_2} = 0$$

does not necessarily assure that a minimum occurs. It does, however, assure that a minimum value of $|\partial x_e/\partial T|$ occurs when $\partial C_1/\partial T$ and $\partial C_2/\partial T$ are of like sign. If they are opposite sign $\partial(\partial x_e/\partial T)/\partial C_2 \neq 0$, the quantity $\partial x_e/\partial T$ then may be set equal to zero, and solving equation (B-39) for this condition gives the result

$$\frac{C_2}{C_1} = \left(-\frac{\partial C_2/\partial T}{\partial C_1/\partial T} \right)^{1/2}. \tag{B-46}$$

Appendix C

Derivation of *Y*-Parameter Equations for the Grounded-Base Oscillator

The grounded-base crystal oscillator can be represented by the schematic diagram of Figure C-1.

Let the circuit be redrawn and the transistor replaced by a four-terminal network described by its *Y*-parameters. The diagram of Figure C-2 then results. If the transistor is represented by its *Y*-parameters, the feedback network must be represented by its *Z*-parameters if equation (A-12) is to be used.

For this analysis it is convenient to include the output resistance of the transistor in the load resistor R_T. This is accomplished by using a value of R_T which is equal to $R_L + (1/g_{ob})$. Often g_{ob} is negligible and the correction need not be used. The output capacity of the transistor will be lumped in parallel with L, thus making $y_{ob} = 0$ in the analysis. The reverse transfer admittance y_{rb} will be neglected to simplify the analysis.

The network which must be represented by its *Z*-parameters is given in Figure C-3.

From this circuit, the *Z*-parameters can be calculated using the following definitions:

Input impedance

$$Z_i = \left.\frac{V_1}{I_1}\right|_{I_2=0} \qquad \text{(C-1)}$$

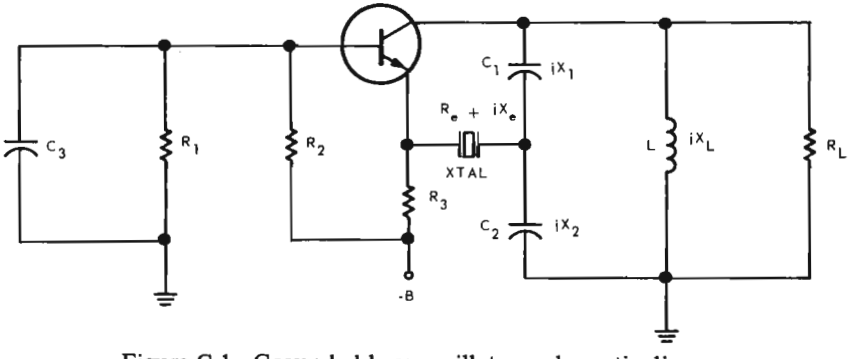


Figure C-1. Grounded-base oscillator: schematic diagram.

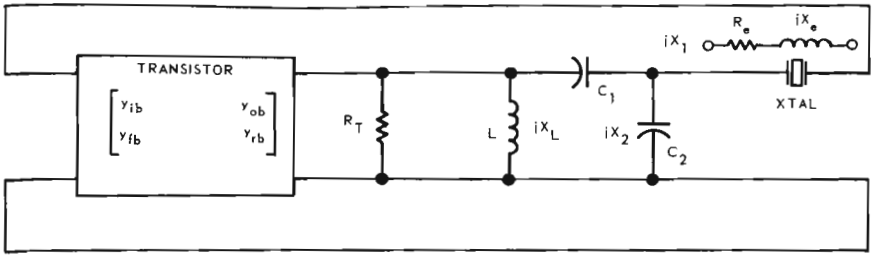


Figure C-2. Grounded-base oscillator: ac circuit diagram.

Output impedance
$$Z_o = \left.\frac{V_2}{I_2}\right|_{I_1=0} \tag{C-2}$$

Forward transfer impedance
$$Z_f = \left.\frac{V_2}{I_1}\right|_{I_2=0} \tag{C-3}$$

Reverse transfer impedance
$$Z_r = \left.\frac{V_1}{I_2}\right|_{I_1=0} \tag{C-4}$$

To simplify the analysis, it will be assumed that $X_1 + X_2 + X_L = 0$. This is approximately resonance for the tank circuit.

From equation (C-1) it can be seen that Z_i is merely the input impedance of the network with the output open-circuited and can be written by inspection as $Z_i = R_T$.

The forward transfer impedance is given by the ratio of V_2 to I_1 with the output open-circuited. In order to calculate this, it is convenient to first deter-

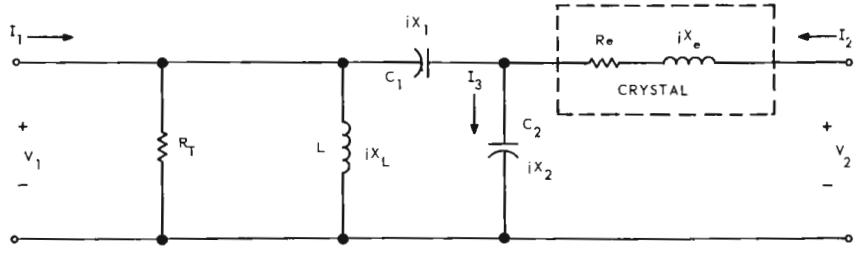


Figure C-3. Grounded-base oscillator feedback network: simplified diagram.

mine I_3 in terms of I_1, which is given by

$$I_3 = \frac{I_1\left(\dfrac{jR_TX_L}{R_T + jX_L}\right)}{\dfrac{jR_TX_L}{R_T + jX_L} + j(x_1 + x_2)}. \tag{C-5}$$

Simplifying gives

$$I_3 = \frac{jI_1R_TX_L}{-X_L(X_1 + X_2) + jR_T(X_1 + X_2 + X_L)}, \tag{C-6}$$

but

$$I_3 = \frac{V_2}{jX_2}.$$

Substituting this and making use of the assumption that

$$X_L + X_1 + X_2 = 0$$

gives

$$\frac{V_2}{I_1} = \frac{R_TX_2X_L}{X_L(X_1 + X_2)} = \frac{R_TX_2}{X_1 + X_2} = \frac{-R_TX_2}{X_L}; \tag{C-7}$$

therefore

$$Z_f = -\frac{R_TX_2}{X_L}.$$

Since the network is composed entirely of reciprocal elements, the forward and reverse transfer impedances are equal, so that

$$Z_f = Z_r = -\frac{R_TX_2}{X_L}. \tag{C-8}$$

From equation (C-2), it can be seen that Z_o is merely the output impedance of the network with the input open-circuited. It is given by

$$Z_o = R_e + jX_e + \frac{\left[\left(\dfrac{jR_TX_L}{R_T + jX_L}\right) + jX_1\right] jX_2}{\left[\left(\dfrac{jR_TX_L}{R_T + jX_L}\right) + jX_1\right] + jX_2}. \tag{C-9}$$

Simplifying this gives

$$Z_o = R_e + jX_e + \frac{jX_2[-X_1X_L + jR_T(X_1 + X_L)]}{jR_T(X_1 + X_2 + X_L) - X_L(X_1 + X_2)}. \quad \text{(C-10)}$$

Making use of the assumption $X_1 + X_2 + X_L = 0$ and further simplifying gives

$$Z_o = R_e + jX_e + \frac{R_TX_2(X_1 + X_L) + jX_1X_2X_L}{X_L(X_1 + X_2)} \quad \text{(C-11)}$$

and

$$Z_o = R_e + jX_e + \frac{R_TX_2^2 - jX_1X_2X_L}{X_L^2}. \quad \text{(C-12)}$$

These results can be substituted in the general equation for oscillation as developed in Appendix A:

$$y_{fb}Z_f + y_{ib}Z_o + y_{ob}Z_i + y_{rb}Z_r + \Delta y_b \Delta Z + 1 = 0. \quad \text{(C-13)}$$

Since y_{ob} is being accounted for the feedback network, and since y_{rb} is assumed to be zero, $\Delta y = y_{ib}y_{ob} - y_{fb}y_{ob} = 0$. This simplifies equation (C-13) to

$$y_{fb}Z_f + y_{ib}Z_o + 1 = 0. \quad \text{(C-14)}$$

Substituting for Z_f and Z_o gives

$$\frac{-y_{fb}R_TX_2}{X_L} + y_{ib}\left[R_e + jX_e + \frac{R_TX_2^2 - jX_1X_2X_L}{X_L^2}\right] + 1 = 0. \quad \text{(C-15)}$$

Substituting $y_{fb} = g_{fb} + jb_{fb}$ and $y_{ib} = g_{ib} + jb_{ib}$ gives

$$\frac{-(g_{fb} + jb_{fb})R_TX_2}{X_L} + (g_{ib} + jb_{ib})\left[R_e + jX_e + \frac{R_TX_2^2 - jX_1X_2X_L}{X_L^2}\right] + 1 = 0. \quad \text{(C-16)}$$

Performing the indicated multiplications and collecting terms results in the following equation:

$$-g_{fb}R_TX_2 - jb_{fb}R_TX_2 + g_{ib}R_eX_L + jg_{ib}X_eX_L + jb_{ib}R_eX_L - b_{ib}X_eX_L + \frac{g_{ib}R_TX_2^2}{X_L} - jg_{ib}X_1X_2 + \frac{jR_TX_2^2b_{ib}}{X_L} + b_{ib}X_1X_2 + X_L = 0. \quad \text{(C-17)}$$

This equation can be separated into real and imaginary components. The real

parts are

$$-g_{fb}R_T X_2 + g_{ib}R_e X_L - b_{ib}X_e X_L + \frac{g_{ib}R_T X_2^2}{X_L} + b_{ib}X_1 X_2 + X_L = 0. \tag{C-18}$$

Substituting $g_{ib} = 1/R_{\text{in}}$ and simplifying gives

$$g_{fb} = \frac{1}{R_T}\left(\frac{X_L}{X_2}\right)\left[\frac{R_e + R_{\text{in}}}{R_{\text{in}}}\right] + \frac{1}{R_{\text{in}}}\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right) + \frac{b_{ib}X_1}{R_T} - b_{ib}\left(\frac{X_e}{R_T}\right)\left(\frac{X_L}{X_2}\right) = 0. \tag{C-19}$$

The imaginary parts are

$$-b_{fb}R_T X_2 + g_{ib}X_e X_L + b_{ib}R_e X_L - g_{ib}X_1 X_2 + \frac{R_T X_2^2 b_{ib}}{X_L} = 0. \tag{C-20}$$

Again substituting $g_{ib} = 1/R_{\text{in}}$ and simplifying gives

$$X_e = b_{fb}R_T R_{\text{in}}\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right) + X_1\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right) - b_{ib}R_{\text{in}}\left[R_e + R_T\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right)^2\right]. \tag{C-21}$$

The optimum value of X_L/X_2 with respect to transistor gain can be found by differentiating equation (C-19):

$$\frac{d(g_{fb})}{d(X_L/X_2)} = \frac{1}{R_T}\left[\frac{R_e + R_{\text{in}}}{R_{\text{in}}}\right] - \frac{1}{R_{\text{in}}}\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right)^2 - b_{ib}\left(\frac{X_e}{R_T}\right). \tag{C-22}$$

If it is required that the crystal operate at series resonance $X_e = 0$ or if b_{ib} is negligible, then equation (C-22) simplifies to

$$\frac{d(g_{fb})}{d(X_L/X_2)} = \frac{1}{R_T}\left[\frac{R_e + R_{\text{in}}}{R_{\text{in}}}\right] - \frac{1}{R_{\text{in}}}\left(\frac{X_2}{X_L}\right)^2 \tag{C-23}$$

Solving this for X_L/X_2 gives

$$X_L/X_2 = -\sqrt{R_T/(R_e + R_{\text{in}})} \tag{C-24}$$

The minimum g_{fb} then is given by

$$|g_{fb}|_{\min} = \left| -\frac{2}{R_{\text{in}}}\sqrt{(R_e + R_{\text{in}})/R_T} + b_{ib}(X_1/R_T)\right|. \tag{C-25}$$

NOTE. This assumes that the crystal is at series resonance, $X_e = 0$.

Appendix D

Derivation of Approximate Equations for the Clapp Oscillator

The impedance Z_L, can be written as

$$Z_L = \frac{(R_e + jX_e)\left[jX_2 + \dfrac{(1/g_m)(jX_1)}{(1/g_m) + jX_1}\right]}{R_e + jX_e + jX_2 + \dfrac{(1/g_m)(jX_1)}{(1/g_m) + jX_1}}.$$

This can be simplified to

$$Z_L = \frac{(R_e + jX_e)\,[jX_2(1 + jX_1 g_m) + jX_1]}{(R_e + jX_e + jX_2)(1 + jX_1 g_m) + jX_1}.$$

It can be further rearranged to the form

$$Z_L = \frac{(R_e + jX_e)\,[j(X_1 + X_2) - X_1 X_2 g_m]}{R_e - X_e X_1 g_m - X_1 X_2 g_m + j(X_1 + X_2 + X_e) + jR_e X_1 g_m}.$$

If we now assume that

$$g_m X_1 X_2 \ll X_e, \quad X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad R_e \ll X_e,$$

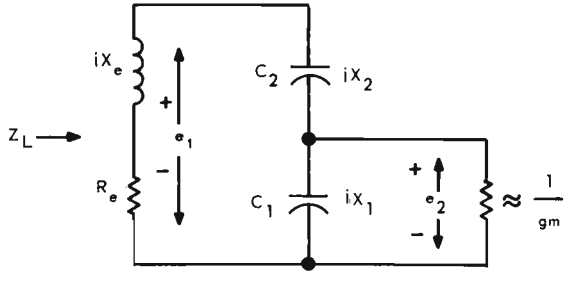


Figure D-1. Clapp oscillator tank circuit: simplified diagram.

then the expression may be simplified to

$$Z_L = \frac{-X_e(X_1 + X_2)}{R_e - g_m X_1 (X_e + X_2)};$$

but since $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$,

$$Z_L = \frac{(X_1 + X_2)^2}{R_e + g_m X_1^2}.$$

The voltage ratio e_2/e_1 may be found to be

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{\dfrac{(1/g_m)(jX_1)}{(1/g_m) + jX_1}}{jX_2 + \dfrac{(1/g_m)jX_1}{(1/g_m) + jX_1}}.$$

This simplifies to

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{X_1}{X_1 + X_2 + jX_1X_2g_m}.$$

If we assume that $X_1 + X_2 >> X_1X_2g_m$, then the expression simplifies to

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} \doteq \frac{X_1}{X_1 + X_2}.$$

Appendix E

Derivation of Approximate Equations for the Pierce Oscillator Analysis

The input impedance Z_L may be written as

$$Z_L = \frac{jX_2(R_e + jX_e + jX_1)}{R_e + jX_2 + jX_1 + jX_e}.$$

If $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$, then the expression simplifies to

$$Z_L = \frac{-X_2(X_e + X_1) + jR_eX_2}{R_e}.$$

Again applying the preceding assumption,

$$Z_L = \frac{X_2}{R_e}(X_2 + jR_e).$$

If we now assume that $X_2 >> R_e$, the input impedance simplifies to

$$Z_L = \frac{X_2^2}{R_e}.$$

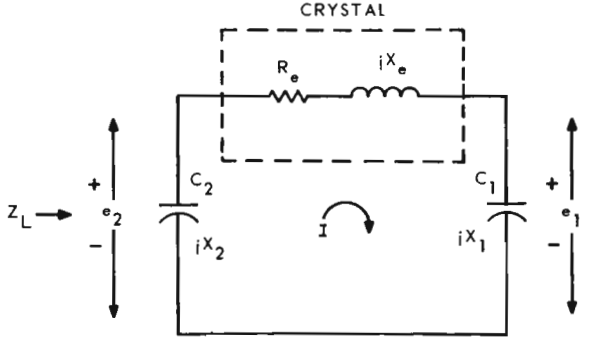


Figure E-1. Pierce oscillator π-network: simplified diagram.

The voltage e_1 may be written as $e_1 = jX_1 I$, where

$$I = \frac{e_2}{R_e + j(X_e + X_1)}.$$

Combining these gives

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = \frac{jX_1}{R_e + j(X_1 + X_e)}.$$

If $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$, then this expression simplifies to

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = \frac{jX_1}{R_e - jX_2}.$$

If now we assume that $X_2 >> R_e$, then

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = -\frac{X_1}{X_2}.$$

Also, since

$$X_1 = -\frac{1}{\omega C_1}$$

and

$$X_2 = -\frac{1}{\omega C_2},$$

then

$$\frac{e_1}{e_2} = -\frac{C_2}{C_1}.$$

Appendix F

Derivation of Approximate Equations for the Colpitts Oscillator

The input impedance can be written as

$$Z_L = \frac{jX_2(R_e + jX_1 + jX_e)}{jX_2 + jX_1 + jX_e + R_e}.$$

Assuming that $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$ gives

$$Z_L = \frac{-X_2(X_1 + X_e) + jR_eX_2}{R_e}.$$

Again applying the preceding assumption gives

$$Z_L = \frac{X_2(X_2 + jR_e)}{R_e}.$$

If we now assume that $X_2 >> R_e$, we have

$$Z_L = \frac{X_2^2}{R_e}.$$

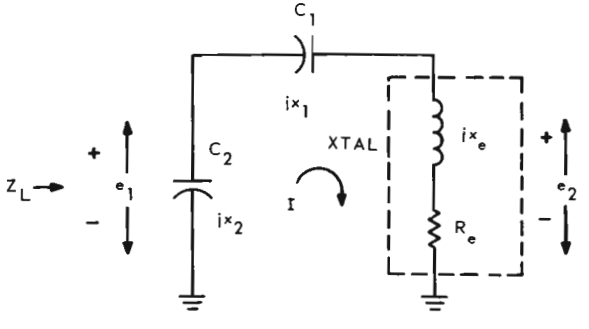


Figure F-1. Colpitts oscillator phase shift circuit: simplified diagram.

The voltage e_2 may be written as

$$e_2 = I(R_e + jX_e),$$

where

$$I = \frac{e_1}{jX_1 + R_e + jX_e}.$$

Combining these gives

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{R_e + jX_e}{R_e + jX_1 + jX_e}.$$

If we again assume that $X_1 + X_2 + X_e = 0$, then $X_e = -(X_1 + X_2)$ and $X_1 = -(X_2 + X_e)$. Substituting these gives

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{R_e - j(X_1 + X_2)}{R_e - jX_2}.$$

Assuming now that $R_e << X_2$ and $R_e << X_1$, we have

$$\frac{e_2}{e_1} = \frac{X_1 + X_2}{X_2}.$$

Appendix G

Large-Signal Transistor Parameters

In general, a transistor can be thought of as being made up of intrinsic and extrinsic elements. The extrinsic elements in general result from resistance, capacitance, or inductance in the leads connected to the semiconductor material. The bulk resistances of the semiconductor material also give rise to elements which to a first approximation may be lumped into the extrinsic elements. Thus, the transistor may be represented as shown in Figure G-1.

In many applications, particularly when the emitter current is low and the frequency considerably below f_t, the circuit behavior is not appreciably affected by the extrinsic elements. It is then possible to consider only the behavior of the intrinsic transistor, which is done for this analysis.

Referring to Figure G-1, it is known that the intrinsic base voltage is given by

$$V_{b'} = \frac{\lambda KT}{q} \ln \left[1 + \frac{I_e - \alpha_I I_c}{I_{ed}} \right]. \tag{G-1}$$

Most of the symbols have been previously defined in this book; therefore, a complete explanation is not given here. Since λ is usually near unity and to sim-

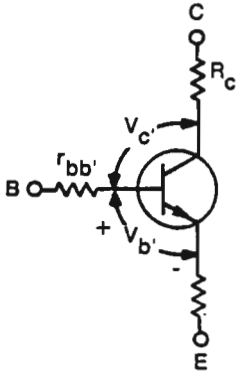


Figure G-1. Transistor model showing extrinsic elements.

plify the terminology, λ is taken to be unity for the analysis. It may be reinserted later if desired by replacing K by λK in the equations.

The term α_I is the inverted current gain I_e/I_c with the collector acting as emitter. I_{ed} is the diffusion saturation current. It should be pointed out that I_{ed} is very much a function of temperature and, in general, doubles about every 10°C. This effect results in a larger change in $V_{b'}$ with temperature than the q/KT term. In the active region the collector current is given by

$$I_c = \alpha_N I_e \tag{G-2}$$

where α_N is the normal forward emitter-to-collector current gain. This equation is used in equation (G-1) in both the active region and for large signals in the cutoff region during part of each cycle. While equation (G-2) does not necessarily hold during cutoff, the collector current is so small during that part of the cycle that a considerable error has very little effect on the overall behavior. Making the indicated substitution yields the equation

$$V_{b'} = \frac{KT}{q} \ln \left[1 + \frac{I_e(1 - \alpha_I \alpha_N)}{I_{ed}} \right]. \tag{G-3}$$

Solving for I_e gives

$$I_e = \frac{I_{ed}}{(1 - \alpha_I \alpha_N)} [e^{qV_{b'}/KT} - 1]. \tag{G-4}$$

Now let

$$I_R = \frac{I_{ed}}{(1 - \alpha_I \alpha_N)}. \tag{G-5}$$

Substituting this into equation (G-4) gives

$$I_e = I_R (e^{qV_{b'}/KT} - 1), \tag{G-6}$$

which is in the form of the well known Shockley equation for an ideal p-n junction. I_R is generally in the order of three times the value of I_{ed} and thus is a very small current. Therefore, for practical purposes, equation (G-6) is equivalent to equation (G-7) if the transistor is active during at least a part of each cycle:

$$I_e = I_R e^{qV_{b'}/KT} \tag{G-7}$$

We now assume that a sinusoidal signal is applied between the base and emitter. In general, some dc bias is also applied and the base-to-emitter voltage has the form

$$V_{b'} = E \cos \omega t + E_0. \tag{G-8}$$

The emitter current is then given by

$$I_e = I_R \exp\left[\frac{q}{KT}(E\cos\omega t + E_0)\right]. \tag{G-9}$$

This can be rewritten in the form:

$$I_e = I_R \exp\left(\frac{qE_0}{KT}\right) \exp\left(\frac{q}{KT} E\cos\omega t\right). \tag{G-10}$$

Let us now examine the term

$$\exp\left(\frac{q}{KT} E\cos\omega t\right). \tag{G-11}$$

To expand this, we use the Bessel function expansion of the form*

$$\exp z\cos\theta = I_0(z) + 2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} I_n(z)\cos n\theta, \tag{G-12}$$

where $I_n(z)$ represents a modified Bessel function of the first kind and of order n. These modified Bessel functions are also referred to as the hyperbolic Bessel functions and are related to the familiar $J_n(z)$ Bessel functions much as the trigonometric functions are related to the hyperbolic functions. Thus,

$$I_n(z) = (i^{-n}) J_n(iz), \tag{G-13}$$

where

$$i = \sqrt{-1}.$$

In series form,

$$I_n(z) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(z/2)^{n+2j}}{j!(n+j)!}. \tag{G-14}$$

Substituting $z = qE/KT$ into equation (G-12) and substituting equation (G-12) into equation (G-10), we have

$$I_e = I_R \exp\left(\frac{qE_0}{KT}\right)\left[I_0\left(\frac{Eq}{KT}\right) + 2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} I_n\left(\frac{Eq}{KT}\right)\cos n\omega t\right]. \tag{G-15}$$

For convenience in notation, let $V = Eq/KT$. Substituting this into equaion (G-15) and writing out a few terms, we have

$$I_e = I_R(\exp qE_0/KT)[I_0(V) + 2I_1(V)\cos\omega t + 2I_2(V)\cos 2\omega t + \cdots]. \tag{G-16}$$

*See page 106 of reference 33.

The dc component is given by

$$I_e(\text{mean}) = I_R \exp qE_0/KT\, I_0(V). \tag{G-17}$$

Substituting this into equation (G-16) to eliminate E_0, we have

$$I_e = I_e(\text{mean})\left[1 + \frac{2I_1(V)}{I_0(V)}\cos \omega t + \frac{2I_2(V)}{I_0(V)}\cos 2\omega t + \cdots\right]. \tag{G-18}$$

As stated earlier, $I_c = \alpha_N I_e$, but α_N is nearly unity; hence, $I_c \doteq I_e$. To determine the transconductance, we form the ratio,

$$g_m = \frac{i_c(\text{fund})}{E \cos \omega t}, \tag{G-19}$$

which is given by

$$g_m = \frac{2I_e(\text{mean})\, I_1(V) \cos \omega t}{I_0(V)\, E \cos \omega t} = \frac{2I_e(\text{mean})\, I_1(V)}{EI_0(V)}. \tag{G-20}$$

In the small-signal case, $V = 0$ and $I_0(V) = 1$, while

$$I_1(V) = \frac{V}{2} = \frac{Eq}{2KT}. \tag{G-21}$$

Substituting these in equation (G-20) gives

$$g_{m0} = \frac{2I_e(\text{mean})\, Eq}{2KTE} = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})\, q}{KT}, \tag{G-22}$$

which is the well known small-signal value. Substituting this in equation (G-20) for I_e(mean) gives

$$\frac{g_m}{g_{m0}} = \frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{G-23}$$

It is also possible to determine the input impedance of the transistor from equation (G-18) making use of the fact that the base current is related to the emitter current by the factor $\beta + 1$; hence,

$$I_b = \frac{I_e}{\beta + 1}. \tag{G-24}$$

The equivalent input resistance is given by

$$R_{\text{in}} = \frac{E \cos \omega t}{I_b(\text{fund})}, \tag{G-25}$$

which is

$$R_{in} = \frac{E \cos \omega t \, (\beta + 1) I_0(V)}{2I_e(\text{mean}) I_1(V) \cos \omega t} = \frac{E(\beta + 1) I_0(V)}{2I_e(\text{mean}) I_1(V)}. \tag{G-26}$$

In the small-signal case $V = 0$ and, using the limit values of equation (G-21), we have

$$R_{in0} = \frac{E(\beta + 1)}{2I_e(\text{mean}) (Eq/2KT)} = \frac{(\beta + 1) KT}{qI_e}, \tag{G-27}$$

which is the well known small-signal value. Substituting this into equation (G-26) gives

$$\frac{R_{in}}{R_{in0}} = \frac{VI_0(V)}{2I_1(V)}. \tag{G-28A}$$

For purposes of computer analysis it is possible to approximate equation (G-28A) by the simplified equation

$$\frac{r_e}{r_{e0}} = \left[1 + \left(\frac{Eq}{2KT\lambda}\right)^2\right]^{1/2} = \left[1 + \left(\frac{5.78 \times 10^{-3} E}{T\lambda}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}. \tag{G-28B}$$

The diffusion capacitance for large-signal voltages may also be computed. The charge stored in the base region is proportional to the base current; hence

$$Q = MI_b, \tag{G-29}$$

where M is a constant of proportionality related to the carrier lifetime. Substituting equation (G-24) into (G-7) and the resultant equation into (G-29) gives

$$Q = \frac{MI_R}{(\beta + 1)} e^{qV_{b'}/KT}. \tag{G-30}$$

The reactive component of the base current is given by

$$i = \frac{dQ}{dt}. \tag{G-31}$$

Differentiating equation (G-30) and substituting in to (G-31) gives

$$i = \frac{MI_R}{(\beta + 1)} \frac{q}{KT} e^{qV_{b'}/KT} \frac{dV_{b'}}{dt}. \tag{G-32}$$

Substituting $V_{b'} = E \cos \omega t + E_0$ gives

$$i = \frac{-MI_R qE\omega}{(\beta + 1) KT} \exp\left(\frac{qE_0}{KT}\right) \left[\exp\left(\frac{qE}{KT} \cos \omega t\right)\right] \sin \omega t. \tag{G-33}$$

For convenience in notation, let

$$P = -\frac{MI_R qE\omega}{(\beta+1)KT}\exp\left(\frac{qE_0}{KT}\right); \tag{G-34}$$

then

$$i = P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\omega t}{KT}\right)\sin\omega t. \tag{G-35}$$

The fundamental component of this current may be found by Fourier analysis using the formulas given in equations (H-5), (H-6), and (H-7) of Appendix H. Thus the coefficient of the sin ωt term is given by

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} i\sin\theta\, d\theta, \tag{G-36}$$

where $\theta = \omega t$. Substituting for i from equation (G-35) gives

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\theta}{KT}\right)\sin\theta\sin\theta\, d\theta. \tag{G-37}$$

Using the identity, $\sin^2\theta = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta$,

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\theta}{KT}\right)d\theta$$

$$-\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\theta}{KT}\right)\cos 2\theta\, d\theta. \tag{G-38}$$

The first integral may be evaluated using the form*

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}(\exp z\cos\theta)\, d\theta = I_0(Z), \tag{G-39}$$

and the second, using the form**

$$\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi}(\exp z\cos\theta)\cos n\theta\, d\theta = (-1)^n I_n(z).$$

*See page 162 of reference 33.
**See page 51 of reference 33.

Using these forms, we have

$$b_1 = P\left[I_0\left(\frac{qE}{KT}\right) - I_2\left(\frac{qE}{KT}\right)\right]. \tag{G-40}$$

It can be shown that***

$$I_0(z) - I_2(z) = \frac{2I_1(z)}{z}; \tag{G-41}$$

therefore,

$$b_1 = \frac{2PI_1(qE/KT)}{qE/KT} = \frac{2PI_1(V)}{V}. \tag{G-42}$$

The coefficient of the cos ωt term is given by

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\theta}{KT}\right)\sin\theta\cos\theta\, d\theta. \tag{G-43}$$

Using the identity

$$\sin\theta\cos\theta = \tfrac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta, \tag{G-44}$$

we have

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} P\left(\exp\frac{qE\cos\theta}{KT}\right)\sin 2\theta\, d\theta. \tag{G-45}$$

The value of this integral can be shown to be zero.* Thus the fundamental component of capacitive current is given by

$$i = \frac{2PI_1(V)}{V}\sin\omega t. \tag{G-46}$$

The equivalent capacitance is given by the relationship,

$$\omega C = \frac{i(\text{fund})\ (90^\circ \text{ leading})}{e(\text{fund})}. \tag{G-47}$$

Now - sin ωt leads cos ωt by 90 degrees; hence:

$$\omega C_{de} = \frac{-2PI_1(V)}{EV}, \tag{G-48}$$

***See page 163 of reference 33.

*See page 51 of reference 33.

since $e = E \cos \omega t$. Substituting for P from equation (G-34),

$$C_{de} = \frac{Mq}{KT(\beta + 1)} \frac{2I_1(V)}{V} I_R \, e^{qE_0/KT}. \tag{G-49}$$

Substituting equation (G-17) for $I_R \exp qE_0/KT$ gives

$$C_{de} = \frac{M}{\beta + 1} \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT} \frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{G-50}$$

For the small-signal case, we may use the limit values given in (G-21) and

$$C_{de0} = \frac{M}{\beta + 1} \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT}. \tag{G-51}$$

Therefore, from the circuit of Figure 6-5 and equation (6-16),

$$\frac{M}{\beta + 1} = \frac{1}{2\pi f_t}. \tag{G-52}$$

Also dividing equation (G-50) by equation (G-51), we have

$$\frac{C_{de}}{C_{de0}} = \frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{G-53}$$

The bias shift resulting from the signal voltage can be determined from equation (G-17). With signal present,

$$I_e(\text{mean}) = I_R(\exp qE_0/KT)\, I_0(V). \tag{G-54}$$

With no signal, $V = 0$ and $I_0(V) = 1$; hence,

$$I_e(\text{no signal}) = I_R \exp qV_{be}/KT. \tag{G-55}$$

We wish to determine E_0 so that

$$I_e(\text{mean}) = I_e(\text{no signal}).$$

Equating gives

$$(\exp qE_0/KT)\, I_0(V) = \exp qV_{be}/KT. \tag{G-56}$$

Solving for qE_0/KT gives

$$\frac{qE_0}{KT} = \frac{qV_{be}}{KT} - \ln I_0(V), \tag{G-57}$$

or

$$E_0 - V_{be} = \frac{KT}{q} \ln I_0(V). \tag{G-58}$$

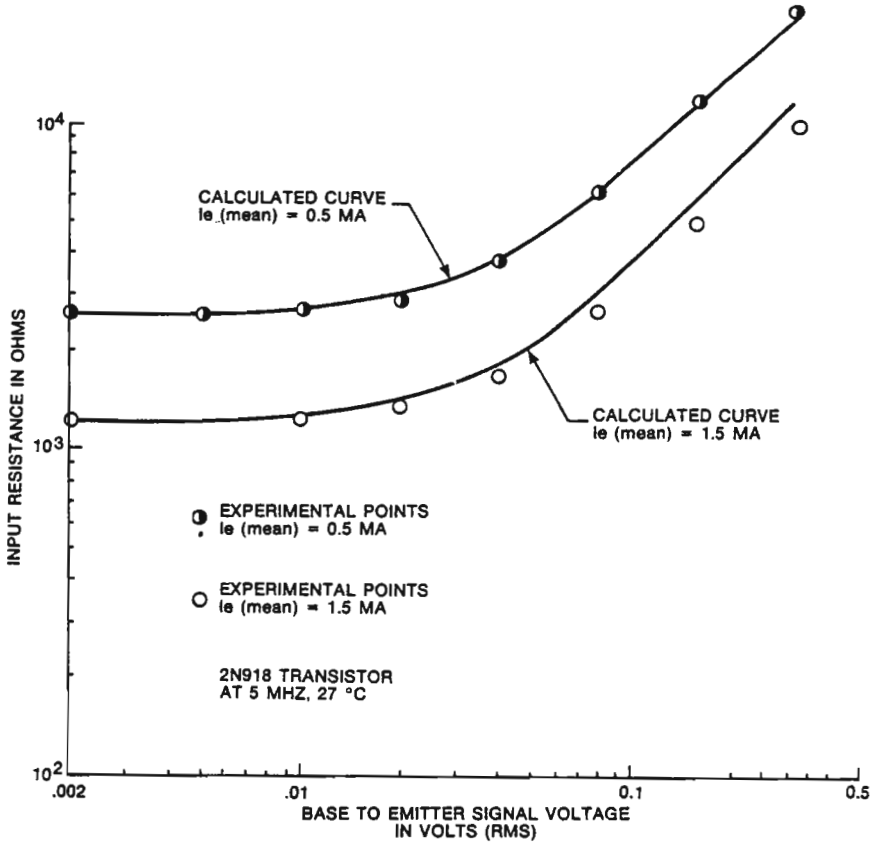


Figure G-2. Input resistance versus signal voltage.

The bias shift is given by

$$V_{\text{bias}} = E_0 - V_{be} = \frac{KT}{q} \ln I_0(V) \tag{G-59}$$

Noting that $V = qE/KT$, we have

$$V_{\text{bias}} = \frac{KT}{q} \ln I_0\left(\frac{qE}{KT}\right). \tag{G-60}$$

In order to verify the results of this analysis, a series of measurements was made on a type 2N918 transistor. Tests were run at emitter currents of both 0.5 mA and at 1.5 mA. The ac sinusoidal input voltage was varied from 0.002 to

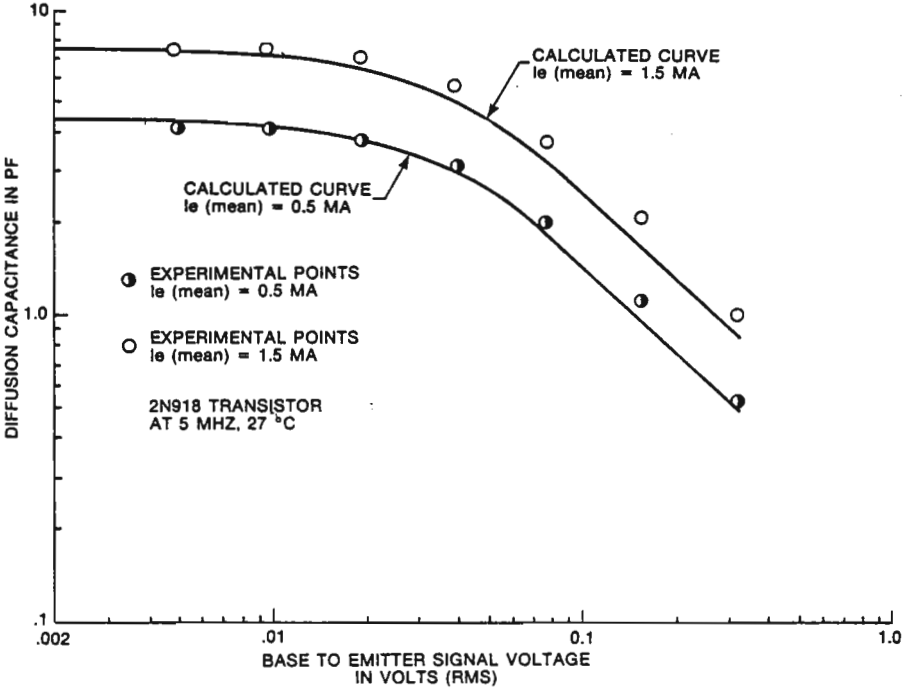


Figure G-3. Diffusion capacitance versus signal voltage.

0.3 V. As the signal voltage was increased, the bias circuit was readjusted to maintain the emitter current at the indicated value. The resistance and capacitance measurements were made, using a Boonton *RX* meter, by adjusting the oscillator to obtain the desired ac voltage. The graph of Figure G-2 shows the input resistance variation as a function of signal level, while Figure G-3 shows how the input capacitance varies with drive. The curves are plotted from equation (G-28B), and the circles correspond to measured points. As can be seen, the agreement is excellent.

Appendix H

Large-Signal Transistor Parameters with Emitter Degeneration

The emitter current of a transistor in the common-emitter configuration has a characteristic similar to that shown in Figure H-1. If a significant amount of emitter degeneration is used, the curve may be approximated by a straight line as shown. The slope of this line is $1/(r_e + R_f)_0$ where r_e is the small-signal transistor emitter resistance calculated at the mean emitter current I_e, and R_f is the external emitter degeneration resistance. Thus the emitter current is given approximately by

$$i_e = \frac{E \sin \omega t + E_0}{(r_e + R_f)_0} \qquad (E \sin \omega t + E_0) \geq 0 \tag{H-1}$$

$$i_e = 0 \qquad (E \sin \omega t + E_0) < 0. \tag{H-2}$$

The collector current is given by $i_c = \alpha i_e$. Normally α is very near unity and the collector is taken to be equal to the emitter current for this analysis.

The effective conduction angle is 2θ, and the voltage E_0 is given by

$$E_0 = -E \cos \theta. \tag{H-3}$$

Thus we may write

$$i_e = \frac{E \sin \omega t - E \cos \theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0} \qquad \left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) \leq \omega t \leq \left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) \tag{H-4}$$

$$i_e = 0 \qquad \text{elsewhere.}$$

Using Fourier analysis, we may represent i_e by an infinite series of the form

$$i = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega t + b_n \sin n\omega t, \tag{H-5}$$

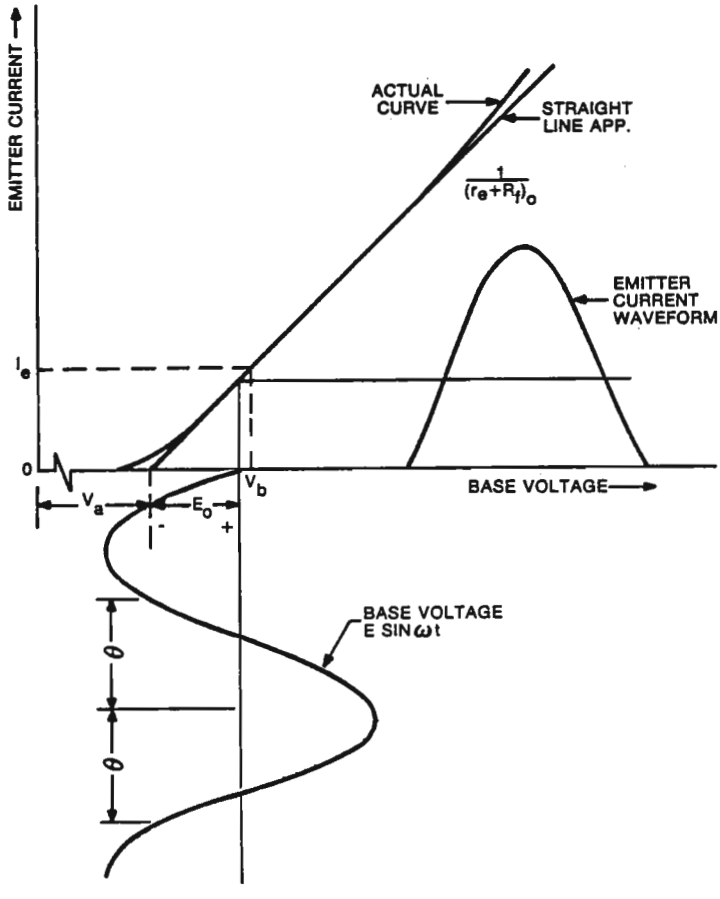


Figure H-1. Input characteristic of transistor.

where the a_n and b_n terms are defined by the equations

$$a_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} i_e \cos n\phi \, d\phi \tag{H-6}$$

$$b_n = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{2\pi} i_e \sin n\phi \, d\phi, \tag{H-7}$$

where $\phi = \omega t$. Let us first find the dc value of the current given by $a_0/2$.

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\, d\phi$$

$$= \frac{2E\,(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}{(R_f + r_e)\pi}. \tag{H-8}$$

Thus the dc emitter current is given by

$$I_e(\text{mean}) = \frac{E}{(r_e + R_f)_0\,\pi}\,(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta). \tag{H-9}$$

The fundamental component of current is given by the a_1 and b_1 terms, which are

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\cos\phi\, d\phi = 0 \tag{H-10}$$

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\sin\phi\, d\phi$$

$$= \frac{E(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0}. \tag{H-11}$$

The second harmonic component is given by the a_2 and b_2 terms, which are:

$$a_2 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\cos 2\phi\, d\phi$$

$$= \frac{E(-\frac{1}{3}\sin 3\theta - \sin\theta + \cos\theta\sin 2\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0} \tag{H-12}$$

$$b_2 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\sin 2\phi\, d\phi = 0. \tag{H-13}$$

The third harmonic component is given by the a_3 and b_3 terms, which are

$$a_3 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\cos 3\phi\, d\phi = 0. \tag{H-14}$$

$$b_3 = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_{(\pi/2)-\theta}^{(\pi/2)+\theta} \frac{E\sin\phi - E\cos\theta}{(r_e + R_f)_0}\sin 3\phi\, d\phi$$

$$= \frac{E(-\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta + \frac{2}{3}\cos\theta\sin 3\theta - \frac{1}{4}\sin 4\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0}. \qquad \text{(H-15)}$$

Substituting these terms in equation (H-5) gives the equation

$$i = \frac{E(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0} + \frac{E(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0}\sin\omega t$$

$$+ \frac{E(-\frac{1}{3}\sin 3\theta - \sin\theta + \cos\theta\sin 2\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0}\cos 2\omega t$$

$$+ \frac{E(-\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta + \frac{2}{3}\cos\theta\sin 3\theta - \frac{1}{4}\sin 4\theta)}{\pi(r_e + R_f)_0}\sin 3\omega t + \cdots. \qquad \text{(H-16)}$$

Substituting for $(r_e + R_f)_0$ from equation (H-9),

$$i = I_e(\text{mean})\left[1 + \frac{(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta)}{(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}\sin\omega t\right.$$

$$+ \frac{(-\frac{1}{3}\sin 3\theta - \sin\theta + \cos\theta\sin 2\theta)}{(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}\cos 2\omega t$$

$$\left. + \frac{(-\frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta + \frac{2}{3}\cos\theta\sin 3\theta - \frac{1}{4}\sin 4\theta)}{(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}\sin 3\omega t + \cdots\right]. \qquad \text{(H-17)}$$

Thus it can be seen that knowing the mean emitter current and the conduction angle, the fundamental and harmonic components of the collector current may be calculated. The conduction angle is found using equation (H-9). Unfortunately, θ cannot be solved for directly, but the equations can be plotted in parametric form using θ as the parameter. This was done and the results are presented in section 6.4.2.

The equivalent input impedance of the transistor is given by

$$R_{\text{in}} = \frac{(\text{fundamental component of base voltage})}{(\text{fundamental component of base current})}. \qquad \text{(H-18)}$$

The base current is given by $i_e/(\beta + 1)$; therefore, from equation (H-17) we have

$$i_b(\text{fund}) = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})(\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta)}{(\beta + 1)(\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta)}\sin\omega t. \qquad \text{(H-19)}$$

Substituting $E \sin \omega t$ for the base voltage and equation (H-19) for the base current, the input resistance may be computed from equation (H-18) as

$$R_{in} = \frac{E(\beta + 1)(\sin \theta - \theta \cos \theta) \sin \omega t}{I_e(\text{mean})(\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta) \sin \omega t}$$

$$R_{in} = \frac{E(\beta + 1)(\sin \theta - \theta \cos \theta)}{I_e(\text{mean})(\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta)}. \tag{H-20}$$

Substituting for $I_e(\text{mean})$ from equation (H-9) gives

$$R_{in} = \frac{(\beta + 1)(r_e + R_f)_0 \pi}{(\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta)}.$$

If we define

$$\frac{r_e + R_f}{(r_e + R_f)_0} = \frac{\pi}{\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta}, \tag{H-21}$$

then

$$R_{in} = (\beta + 1)(r_e + R_f), \tag{H-22}$$

but the small-signal input resistance ($\theta = \pi$) is given by

$$R_{in0} = (\beta + 1)(r_e + R_f)_0;$$

hence

$$\frac{R_{in}}{R_{in0}} = \frac{\pi}{\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta}. \tag{H-23}$$

The effective transconductance of the transistor is given by

$$g_m = \frac{\text{fundamental component of collector current}}{\text{fundamental component of base voltage}}. \tag{H-24}$$

Substituting the fundamental component of collector current from equation (B-17) and $E \sin \omega t$ for the base voltage, we have

$$g_m = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})(\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta) \sin \omega t}{E(\sin \theta - \theta \cos \theta) \sin \omega t}. \tag{H-25}$$

Substituting for the mean emitter current from equation (H-9), we have

$$g_m = \frac{(\theta - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2\theta)}{(r_e + R_f)_0 \pi}. \tag{H-26}$$

Again using the definition of equation (H-21), we have

$$g_m = \frac{1}{(r_e + R_f)}, \tag{H-27}$$

but the small-signal transconductance is given by

$$g_{m0} = 1/(r_e + R_f)_0;$$

therefore,

$$\frac{g_m}{g_{m0}} = \frac{\theta - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2\theta}{\pi}. \tag{H-28}$$

It is also possible to calculate the bias shift due to the presence of the signal voltage. From Figure (H-1) it can be seen that a no-signal base voltage V_b is required to establish an emitter current I_e.

With a signal present and a desired I_e(mean) equal to the no-signal I_e, a voltage $V_a + E_0$, is required. By inspection we see that $I_e(\text{mean}) \times (r_e + R_f)_0$ is the distance between the intersection of the resistance line with the X-axis and V_b. Thus $V_a = V_b - I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0$. The bias required with signal is thus given by

$$V_B = V_a + E_0 = V_b - I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0 + E_0. \tag{H-29}$$

But from the equation (H-3) we have

$$E_0 = -E\cos\theta;$$

therefore,

$$V_B = V_b - I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0 - E\cos\theta. \tag{H-30}$$

Substituting for E from equation (H-9), we have

$$V_B = V_b - I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0 \left(1 + \frac{\pi}{\tan\theta - \theta}\right). \tag{H-31}$$

The bias shift $V_B - V_b$ is therefore given by

$$V_{\text{bias}} = I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0 \left[1 + \frac{\pi}{\tan\theta - \theta}\right]. \tag{H-32}$$

Normalizing the shift to $I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)_0$, we have

$$\frac{V_{\text{bias}}}{I_e(\text{mean})\,(r_e + R_f)} = 1 + \frac{\pi}{\tan\theta - \theta}. \tag{H-33}$$

The peak current for $0 \leqslant \theta < \pi$ is given by

$$i(\text{peak}) = \frac{E + E_0}{(r_e + R_f)_0} = \frac{E(1 - \cos\theta)}{(r_e + R_f)_0}. \tag{H-34}$$

Thus using equation (H-9),

$$\frac{i(\text{peak})}{I_e(\text{mean})} = \frac{\pi(1 - \cos\theta)}{\sin\theta - \theta\cos\theta}. \tag{H-35}$$

For $\theta = \pi$,

$$i(\text{peak}) = I_e + \frac{E}{(r_e + R_f)_0}. \tag{H-36}$$

Appendix I

Nonlinear Analysis of the Colpitts Oscillator Based on the Principle of Harmonic Balance

A simplified schematic diagram of the Colpitts oscillator is shown below in Figure I-1. Here the crystal is represented by its series resistance R and an equivalent inductance L. For the analysis, it is assumed that R_1, R_2, and R_3 are large enough so that they produce only negligible effects on the RF signals. The transistor input and output capacitances are also neglected in this analysis. The effects of these reactances may be determined using the method given in sections 6.4.1 and 7.2.2.

From Appendix G, equation (G-7), we see that the emitter current of the transistor is given by

$$I_e = I_R \exp qV_b/KT \tag{I-1}$$

where I_R is a constant defined in equation (G-5) and V_b is the intrinsic base-to-emitter voltage. The base current is then given by $(\beta + 1)I_b = I_e$, where β is the common-emitter current gain. If we let $I_r = I_R/(\beta + 1)$, we may write

$$I_b = I_r \exp qV_b/KT \tag{I-2}$$

in the active region.*

The circuit of Figure I-1 is redrawn in Figure I-2 to show the base-to-emitter diode and the collector current generator. We note that $V_b = V_1 + V_0$, where V_0 is the base bias voltage.

The equations for the system can be written as follows:

$$V_2 - V_1 = Ri_3 + L\frac{di_3}{dt} \tag{I-3}$$

$$i_2 = C_2\frac{dV_2}{dt} \tag{I-4}$$

*Note that the "active region" here means any operating condition in which the transistor is not saturated ($V_{cb} > 0$) and is much greater than the linear region.

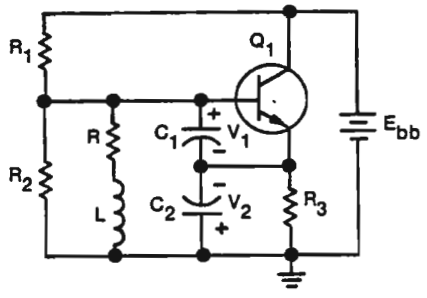


Figure I-1. Colpitts oscillator.

$$i_c + i_2 + i_3 = 0 \tag{I-5}$$

$$i_1 = C_1 \frac{dV_1}{dt} \tag{I-6}$$

$$i_3 = i_1 + I_b \tag{I-7}$$

$$I_b = I_r \exp qV_b/KT \tag{I-8}$$

$$I_c = \beta I_b \tag{I-9}$$

$$V_b = V_0 + V_1 . \tag{I-10}$$

With considerable manipulation, these simultaneous equations can be used to solve for V_1. The resulting expression is

$$\frac{d^3V_1}{dt^3} + \frac{d^2V_1}{dt^2}\left\{\frac{R}{L} + \frac{1}{C_1}\left(\frac{qI_r}{KT}\right)\exp\left[\frac{q}{KT}(V_1 + V_0)\right]\right\}$$
$$+ \left(\frac{dV_1}{dt}\right)^2\left\{\frac{I_r}{C_1}\left(\frac{q}{KT}\right)^2\exp\left[\frac{q(V_1 + V_0)}{KT}\right]\right\}$$

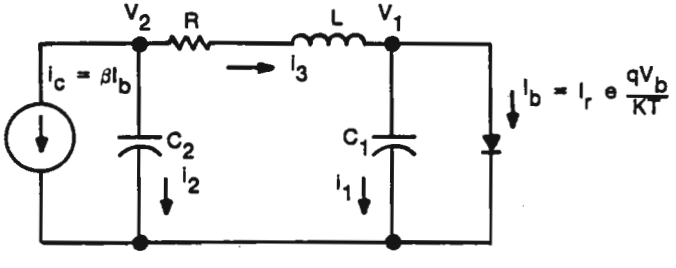


Figure I-2. Equivalent circuit of Colpitts oscillator (bias circuit not shown).

$$+\frac{dV_1}{dt}\left\{\frac{1}{L}\left(\frac{1}{C_1}+\frac{1}{C_2}\right)+\frac{R}{LC_1}\left(\frac{qI_r}{KT}\right)\exp\left[\frac{q}{KT}(V_1+V_0)\right]\right\}$$

$$+\frac{I_r(\beta+1)}{LC_1C_2}\exp\left[\frac{q}{KT}(V_1+V_0)\right]=0. \tag{I-11}$$

This equation is nonlinear not only because of the exponential terms but also because of the presence of the $(dV_1/dt)^2$ term. If this equation could be solved, it would exactly describe the behavior of the equivalent circuit from which it was derived. Unfortunately, an exact solution cannot be found. There are several techniques by which an approximate solution for this equation can be obtained. Perhaps the least difficult is the principle of harmonic balance. Using this technique, the voltage V_1 is assumed to have a solution of the form

$$V_1 = E\cos\omega t. \tag{I-12}$$

This expression is substituted for V_1 in the equation, and coefficients E and ω are adjusted so that the equation is exact insofar as terms of the fundamental frequency are concerned. Terms containing $\cos 2\omega t$, $\sin 2\omega t$, $\cos 3\omega t$, etc., are simply ignored. The justification for this rests in the theory that it is primarily the fundamental terms that determine the amplitude of oscillation and the frequency.

We see that if $V_1 = E\cos\omega t$,

$$\frac{dV_1}{dt} = -\omega E\sin\omega t \tag{I-13}$$

$$\frac{d^2V_1}{dt^2} = -\omega^2 E\cos\omega t \tag{I-14}$$

$$\frac{d^3V_1}{dt^3} = \omega^3 E\sin\omega t. \tag{I-15}$$

Making these substitutions, we obtain

$$\omega^3 E\sin\omega t - \omega^2 E\cos\omega t\left[\frac{R}{L}+\frac{1}{C_1}\left(\frac{qI_r}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qV_0}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qE\cos\omega t}{KT}\right)\right]$$

$$+\omega^2E^2\sin^2\omega t\left[\frac{I_r}{C_1}\left(\frac{q}{KT}\right)^2\exp\left(\frac{qV_0}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qE\cos\omega t}{KT}\right)\right]$$

$$-\omega E\sin\omega t\left[\frac{1}{L}\left(\frac{1}{C_1}+\frac{1}{C_2}\right)\right.$$

$$+\frac{R}{LC_1}\left(\frac{qI_r}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qV_0}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qE\cos\omega t}{KT}\right)\Bigg]$$

$$+\frac{I_r(\beta+1)}{LC_1C_2}\exp\left(\frac{qV_0}{KT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{qE\cos\omega t}{KT}\right)=0. \tag{I-16}$$

This equation can be expanded using the identity,

$$\exp Z\cos\theta = I_0(Z)+2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} I_n(Z)\cos n\theta, \tag{I-17}$$

where $I_n(Z)$ represents modified Bessel function of the first kind and order n.

Retaining only the fundamental terms, after simplification, leads to the equation for oscillation shown below:

$$\omega^3 E\sin\omega t-\frac{R\omega^2 E}{L}\cos\omega t-\frac{\omega^2 VM}{C_1}\left[I_0(V)+I_2(V)\right]\cos\omega t \tag{I-18}$$

$$+\frac{\omega^2 V^2 M}{2C_1}\left[I_1(V)-I_3(V)\right]\cos\omega t-\omega E\left[\frac{1}{L}\left(\frac{1}{C_1}+\frac{1}{C_2}\right)\right]\sin\omega t$$

$$-\frac{\omega RVM}{LC_1}\left[I_0(V)-I_2(V)\right]\sin\omega t+\frac{2(\beta+1)MI_1(V)\cos\omega t}{LC_1C_2}=0.$$

Here use has been made of the trigonometric identities:

$$\sin^2\theta=\tfrac{1}{2}-\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta$$

$$\cos^2\theta=\tfrac{1}{2}+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta$$

$$\cos x\cos y=\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x+y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(x-y)$$

$$\sin x\cos y=\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x+y)+\tfrac{1}{2}\sin(x-y).$$

We have also defined $V=qE/KT$ and $M=I_r e^{qV_0/KT}$

In order for equation (I-18) to be satisfied, both the coefficients of the sine terms and the coefficients of the cosine terms must equate independently to zero. The equation resulting from the sine terms represents the frequency equation, and the equation from the cosine terms represents the amplitude equation.

We note also, using equations (I-2), (I-10), (I-12), and (I-17), that the emitter current is given by

$$I_e=(\beta+1)I_r e^{(q/KT)(V+V_0)}$$

$$=(\beta+1)M\left[I_0(V)+2\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} I_n(V)\cos n\omega t\right]. \tag{I-19}$$

The dc component is given by

$$I_e(\text{mean}) = (\beta + 1)MI_0(V) \tag{I-20}$$

or

$$M = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})}{(\beta + 1)I_0(V)}. \tag{I-21}$$

Turning now to the frequency equation resulting from the sine terms of equation (I-18), we have

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{L}\left(\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}\right) + \frac{RVM}{ELC_1}\left[I_0(V) - I_2(V)\right] = 0. \tag{I-22}$$

Substituting for M from equation (I-21) and noting that $V/E = q/KT$, we have

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{L}\left(\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}\right) + \frac{RqI_e(\text{mean})}{KTLC_1(\beta + 1)}\left[\frac{I_0(V) - I_2(V)}{I_0(V)}\right] = 0. \tag{I-23}$$

Using the identity $2I_1(V)/V = I_0(V) - I_2(V)$, and also noting from equation (G-27) that the base-to-emitter input resistance is given by

$$R_{in0} = \frac{(\beta + 1)KT}{qI_e(\text{mean})},$$

we have

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{L}\left[\frac{1}{C_1}\left(1 + \frac{2I_1(V)R}{VI_0(V)R_{in0}}\right) + \frac{1}{C_2}\right]. \tag{I-24}$$

If we now define R_{in} by the relationship,

$$\frac{R_{in}}{R_{in0}} = \frac{VI_0(V)}{2I_1(V)}, \tag{I-25}$$

equation (I-24) becomes

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{L}\left[\frac{1}{C_1}\left(1 + \frac{R}{R_{in}}\right) + \frac{1}{C_2}\right]. \tag{I-26}$$

It is interesting to observe that equation (I-25) is the same as that derived in Appendix G, equation (G-28A), and that consequently the graph of Figure 3-6 can be used to determine R_{in} after the amplitude V has been determined from the amplitude equation (to be discussed subsequently).

Equation (I-26) cannot be conveniently used to determine the change in frequency resulting from a change in the amplitude of oscillation V because L, as we have used it, is the equivalent steady-state inductance of the crystal, which

is itself a function of frequency. We may rewrite equation (I-26), however, in the form

$$\omega L = \frac{1}{\omega C_1}\left(1 + \frac{R}{R_{in}}\right) + \frac{1}{\omega C_2}. \tag{I-27}$$

Since the Q of the crystal is very high (normally several hundred thousand), the frequency of oscillation is always very near the resonant frequency of the crystal and the reactances of C_1 and C_2 may be considered to be constants the values of which are calculated at the nominal frequency of the crystal. We may then rewrite equation (I-27) as follows:

$$X_e + X_1\left(1 + \frac{R}{R_{in}}\right) + X_2 = 0, \tag{I-28}$$

where X_e is the crystal reactance and X_1 and X_2 are the capacitor reactances.

It is interesting to observe that the effect on frequency caused by R_{in} is the same as that which would be determined by placing the value of R_{in} determined from the nonlinear analysis of Appendix G into the linear Y-parameter, equation (7-12). This results from the $R_e X_1 g_{ie}$ term of K_2. Equation I-28 then becomes equivalent to equation (7-12) if we neglect the reactances of the transistor and the output conductance.

Turning now to the amplitude equation resulting from the coefficients of the cosine terms in equation (I-18), we have

$$-\frac{R\omega^2 E}{L} - \frac{\omega^2 VM}{C_1}[I_0(V) + I_2(V)]$$

$$+\frac{\omega^2 V^2 M}{2C_1}[I_1(V) - I_3(V)] + \frac{2(\beta+1)MI_1(V)}{LC_1C_2} = 0. \tag{I-29}$$

By making the substitutions, $E = VKT/q$ (as defined earlier) and

$$M = \frac{I_e(\text{mean})}{(\beta+1)I_0(V)}$$

[from equation (I-21)] and simplifying, we obtain the expression

$$R = \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})L}{2(\beta+1)KTC_1}\left[\frac{VI_1(V) - VI_3(V) - 2I_0(V) - 2I_2(V)}{I_0(V)}\right]$$

$$+\left(\frac{1}{\omega^2 C_1 C_2}\right)\left(\frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT}\right)\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{I-30}$$

Now using the identity

$$\frac{2n}{Z} I_n(Z) = I_{n-1}(Z) - I_{n+1}(Z), \tag{I-31}$$

with $n = 2$, we have

$$\frac{4I_2(Z)}{Z} = I_1(Z) - I_3(Z).$$

Making this substitution in (I-30) gives

$$R = \frac{-qI_e(\text{mean})L}{(\beta + 1)KTC_1}\left[\frac{I_0(V) - I_2(V)}{I_0(V)}\right] + \left(\frac{1}{\omega^2 C_1 C_2}\right)\left[\frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT}\right]\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{I-32}$$

Again using (I-31) for $n = 1$, we have

$$\frac{2I_1(Z)}{Z} = I_0(Z) - I_2(Z).$$

Performing this substitution gives

$$R = \frac{-qI_e(\text{mean})L}{(\beta + 1)KTC_1}\left[\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}\right] + \left(\frac{1}{\omega^2 C_1 C_2}\right)\left(\frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT}\right)\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}. \tag{I-33}$$

Now let $R_{in0} = (\beta + 1)KT/qI_e(\text{mean})$ from equation (G-27) and

$$g_{m0} = \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT}\frac{\beta}{\beta + 1}$$

from equation (G-22). We have added the factor $\beta/(\beta + 1)$ here to account for the fact that $I_c = I_e\beta/(\beta + 1)$, since in Appendix G the assumption was made that $I_c \doteq I_e$. The resulting equation is

$$R = \frac{-L}{R_{in0}C_1}\left[\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}\right] + \left[\frac{1}{\omega^2 C_1 C_2}\right]\left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{\beta}\right)g_{m0}\right]\left[\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}\right]. \tag{I-34}$$

Now observing that

$$\left(\frac{1}{\beta}\right) g_{m0} = \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT} \frac{\beta}{(\beta+1)} \left(\frac{1}{\beta}\right) = \frac{qI_e(\text{mean})}{KT(\beta+1)} = \frac{1}{R_{in0}},$$

and also substituting $X_1 = -1/\omega C_1$, $X_2 = -1/\omega C_2$, and $X_e = \omega L$, we have

$$X_1 X_2 g_{m0} \left[\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}\right] = R - X_1(X_e + X_2) \left[\frac{2I_1(V)}{VI_0(V)}\right] \frac{1}{R_{in0}}. \tag{I-35}$$

Now letting $g_m/g_{m0} = 2I_1(V)/VI_0(V)$ and $R_{in} = R_{in0}\ VI_0(V)/2I_1(V)$, as defined in Appendix G, so that Figure 3-6 can be used to determine the values, we have

$$X_1 X_2 g_m = R - \frac{X_1(X_e + X_2)}{R_{in}}. \tag{I-36}$$

It is interesting to note that this equation is consistent with linear equation (7-11) if we neglect the transistor reactances and the output admittance. Then K_1, equation (7-13), becomes $-X_1(X_2 + X_e)g_{ie}$, as we determined in equation (I-36) above.

Appendix J

Mathematical Development of the Sideband Level versus Phase Deviation Equation

The frequency spectrum of a phase or frequency modulated signal is well known and will not be derived here. A good treatment of the subject appears in several texts.[42]

The general form of the solution is

$$e = J_0(\delta) E_c \sin \omega_c t + J_1(\delta) E_c [\sin (\omega_c + \omega_m) t - \sin (\omega_c - \omega_m) t]$$
$$+ J_2(\delta) E_c [\sin (\omega_c + 2\omega_m) t + \sin (\omega_c + 2\omega_m) t] \cdots \quad \text{(J-1)}$$

where

e = resultant modulated signal,
E_c = peak unmodulated carrier voltage,
$J_n(\delta)$ = Bessel function of the first kind and of order n,
δ = deviation ratio (for frequency modulation, $\delta = f_d/f_m$; for phase modulation, δ is the peak phase deviation),
ω_c = carrier angular frequency,
ω_m = angular frequency of modulation $\omega_m = 2\pi f_m$, and
f_d = peak frequency deviation in hertz.

Bessel functions of the first kind are given by the infinite series,

$$J_n(\delta) = \frac{\delta^n}{2^n n!} \left[1 - \frac{\delta^2}{2(2n+2)} + \frac{\delta^4}{2(4)(2n+2)(2n+4)} - \frac{\delta^6}{2(4)(6)(2n+2)(2n+4)(2n+6)} + \cdots\right]. \quad \text{(J-2)}$$

For small phase deviations ($\delta << 1$), only the carrier and first sideband pair are significant. The ratio of their amplitudes is given by $J_1(\delta)/J_0(\delta)$. From equation

(J-2) it can be seen that for small δ, $J_0(\delta) \doteq 1$ and $J_1(\delta) \doteq \delta/2$. The relative sideband level is then given by $\delta/2$, where δ is in radians.

The data for Figure 4-2 is given in decibels and degrees; therefore, it is necessary to modify the result, giving the equation

$$\frac{J_1(\delta)}{J_0(\delta)} = 20 \log \frac{\theta}{2(57.3)} \text{ dB} \tag{J-3}$$

where θ is in degrees.

Appendix K

Derivation of Crystal Equations

The equivalent circuit of a crystal is shown in Figure K-1. This circuit is well known, and the definitions of the components are as follows:

C_0 = holder capacitance,
L_1 = motional arm inductance,
C_1 = motional arm capacitance, and
R_1 = motion arm resistance.

If we define

$$Z_0 = \frac{-j}{2\pi f C_0} \tag{K-1}$$

and

$$Z_1 = R_1 + j\left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1}\right), \tag{K-2}$$

then the complex impedance of the crystal at any frequency is given by

$$Z_p = \frac{Z_0 Z_1}{Z_0 + Z_1} = \frac{\left[\frac{-j}{2\pi f C_0}\right]\left[R_1 + j\left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1}\right)\right]}{\left[R_1 + j\left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1} - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_0}\right)\right]} \tag{K-3}$$

$$Z_p = \frac{\left[\frac{2\pi f L_1 - (1/2\pi f C_1)}{2\pi f C_0} - \frac{jR_1}{2\pi f C_0}\right]}{\left[R_1 + j\left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1} - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_0}\right)\right]}. \tag{K-4}$$

For a resonance to occur, Z_p must be resistive and, therefore,

$$\frac{-R_1/2\pi f C_0}{\frac{2\pi f L_1 - (1/2\pi f C_1)}{2\pi f C_0}} = \frac{2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1} - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_0}}{R_1} \tag{K-5}$$

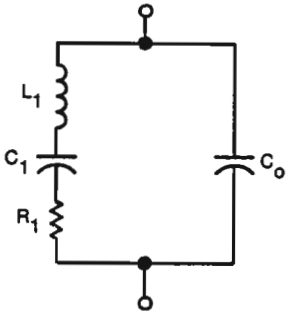


Figure K-1. Crystal equivalent circuit.

$$-R_1^2 = \left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1}\right)\left(2\pi f L_1 - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_1} - \frac{1}{2\pi f C_0}\right) \tag{K-6}$$

$$R_1^2 + 4\pi^2 f^2 L_1^2 - \frac{L_1}{C_1} - \frac{L_1}{C_0} - \frac{L_1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{4\pi^2 f^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{4\pi^2 f^2 C_1 C_0} = 0 \tag{K-7}$$

$$(2\pi f)^4 + (2\pi f)^2\left(\frac{R_1^2}{L_1^2} - \frac{2}{L_1 C_1} - \frac{1}{L_1 C_0}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0}\right) = 0. \tag{K-8}$$

Using the quadratic formula and solving for $(2\pi f)^2$ gives

$$(2\pi f)^2 = \frac{1}{2}\left\{\left(\frac{2}{L_1 C_1} + \frac{1}{L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^2}\right) \pm \left[\left(\frac{2}{L_1 C_1} + \frac{1}{L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^2}\right)^2 - 4\left(\frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0}\right)\right]^{1/2}\right\}, \tag{K-9}$$

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left\{\left(\frac{1}{L_1 C_1} + \frac{1}{2L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right) \pm \left[\left(\frac{1}{L_1 C_1} + \frac{1}{2L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0}\right)\right]^{1/2}\right\}^{1/2}. \tag{K-10}$$

We now consider the quantity,

$$\left[\left(\frac{1}{L_1 C_1} + \frac{1}{2L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0}\right)\right]^{1/2}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} + \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^3 C_1} + \frac{1}{4L_1^2 C_0^2} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^3 C_0} + \frac{R_1^4}{4L_1^4} - \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1^2} - \frac{1}{L_1^2 C_1 C_0}\right)^{1/2}$$

$$= \left[\left(\frac{1}{2L_1 C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)^2 - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^3 C_1}\right]^{1/2}. \tag{K-11}$$

For any practical crystal, however, it is normally true that

$$\left(\frac{1}{2L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)^2 >> \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^3C_1}.$$

Then

$$\left[\left(\frac{1}{2L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)^2 - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^3C_1}\right]^{1/2} \doteq \left(\frac{1}{2L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right). \tag{K-12}$$

Then

$$f \doteq \frac{1}{2\pi}\left[\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1} + \frac{1}{2L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right) \pm \left(\frac{1}{2L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{2L_1^2}\right)\right]^{1/2}. \tag{K-13}$$

This equation gives two resonant frequencies; the first, obtained using the minus sign, is series resonance and the other is parallel resonance.

$$f_s = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1}\right)^{1/2} \tag{K-14}$$

$$f_a = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1} + \frac{1}{L_1C_0} - \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^2}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{K-15}$$

But

$$\frac{1}{L_1C_0} >> \frac{R_1^2}{L_1^2}, \quad f_a \doteq \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1} + \frac{1}{L_1C_0}\right)^{1/2},$$
$$f_a \doteq \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1}\right)^{1/2}\left(1 + \frac{C_1}{C_0}\right)^{1/2}. \tag{K-16}$$

But $C_1/C_0 << 1$. Therefore, the binomial approximation,

$$(1+x)^n \doteq 1 + nx \quad \text{if} \quad x << 1,$$

may be used, and

$$f_a = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(\frac{1}{L_1C_1}\right)^{1/2}\left(1 + \frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right) = f_s\left(1 + \frac{C_1}{2C_0}\right). \tag{K-17}$$

If $\Delta f = f_a - f_s$, then $\Delta f = (C_1/2C_0)f_s$ and the pullability $\Delta f/f_s = C_1/2C_0$.

The frequency at any load point C_L now can be calculated merely by making C_0 in the equation equal to the holder capacity plus the load capacity. Then

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f_s} = \frac{C_1}{2(C_0 + C_L)}. \tag{K-18}$$

Substituting

$$\frac{C_0}{C_1} = r$$

gives

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f_s} = \frac{C_0}{2r(C_0 + C_L)}. \tag{K-19}$$

The resistance of the crystal at any load capacitance C_L can be found conveniently by redrawing the equivalent circuit of a crystal as given in Figure K-1. Here the resultant reactance of L_1 and C_1 is replaced by X, and the circuit of Figure K-2 results.

The impedance of the circuit may be written by inspection as

$$Z = \frac{(R_1 + jx)(jX_{C0})}{R_1 + j(X + X_{C0})}, \tag{K-20}$$

where $X_{C0} = -1/\omega C_0$.

Separating the real and imaginary parts gives, after some algebra,

$$Z = \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{R_1^2 + (X + X_{C0})^2} + \frac{jX_{C0}[R_1^2 + X(X + X_{C0})]}{R_1^2 + (X + X_{C0})^2}. \tag{K-21}$$

The effective resistance is given by the real part and is

$$R_e = \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{R_1^2 + (X + X_{C0})^2}. \tag{K-22}$$

To find the effective resistance at a specific load capacitance, it is necessary to determine the value of X at that load capacitance. This can be done with the aid of Figure K-3.

By definition, the crystal is operating at a load capacitance C_L when it is inductive and resonant with C_L. From Figure K-3 it can be seen that resonance of

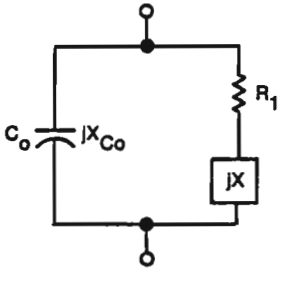


Figure K-2. Quartz crystal resonator.

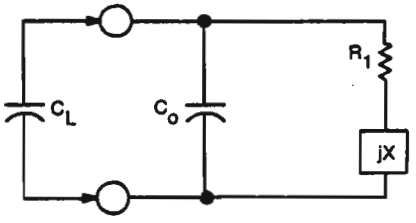


Figure K-3. Crystal and load capacitance.

the crystal with C_L occurs when resonance of X with $C_L + C_0$ occurs. Therefore when the crystal is operating into a load capacitance C_L the reactance X is given by

$$X = \frac{1}{\omega(C_L + C_0)}.$$

From equation (K-22), the effective resistance of the crystal is then given by

$$R_e = \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{R_1^2 + \left[\frac{1}{\omega(C_L + C_0)} - \frac{1}{\omega C_0}\right]^2}. \tag{K-23}$$

This can be simplified to the form:

$$R_e = \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{R_1^2 + \frac{1}{\omega^2 C_0^2}\left(-\frac{C_L}{C_L + C_0}\right)^2}$$

$$R_e = \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{R_1^2 + X_{C0}^2\left(\frac{C_L}{C_L + C_0}\right)^2}. \tag{K-24}$$

If

$$\left|X_{C0}\left(\frac{C_L}{C_L + C_0}\right)\right| >> R_1,$$

then

$$R_e \doteq \frac{R_1 X_{C0}^2}{X_{C0}^2\left(\frac{C_L}{C_L + C_0}\right)^2}$$

$$R_e = R_1\left(\frac{C_L + C_0}{C_L}\right)^2. \tag{K-25}$$

Appendix L

Sample Crystal Specification

DESCRIPTION

Metal-plated quartz resonator, wire-mounted in an HC-18/U holder; designed to operate on the fifth overtone mode of the fundamental frequency of the resonator under noncontrolled temperature conditions. The crystal unit shall be similar to type CR-56/U, per the latest version of MIL-C-3098, except for those paragraphs of this specification noted with a double asterisk (**) prefix.

1. GENERATION INFORMATION
1.1. Crystal element: AT-cut.
1.2. Resonance: Series.
1.3. Mode of vibration: Fifth overtone.
1.4. Maximum drive level: 2.0 mW.
2. ELECTRICAL PARAMETERS
2.1. Frequency range: 50.0–125.0 MHz.
2.2. Specified frequency: Attach table.
**2.3. Frequency tolerance.
2.3.1. Finishing (calibration) tolerance: ±0.0005 percent of the specified frequency when measured at +25°C (+1, -1°C).
2.3.2. Drift tolerance (frequency stability): ±0.002 percent from the frequency measurement made at room ambient when measured over the operating temperature range.
2.3.2.1. Method of measurement: Method B per the latest version of MIL-C-3098 and paragraphs 6.1 and 6.2 of this specification.
**2.4. Test drive level: 1.0 ± 0.5 mW into 60 Ω.
**2.5. Pin-to-pin capacitance: 4.5 pF, maximum.
2.5.1. Method of measurement: Per latest version of MIL-C-3098 and paragraph 6.1 of this specification.
**2.6. Equivalent resistance: 60 Ω, maximum, when measured over the operating temperature range.
2.6.1. Method of measurement: Method B per latest version of MIL-C-3098 and paragraphs 6.1 and 6.2 of this specification.
**2.7. Unwanted modes: Crystal units shall have a minimum unwanted

mode effective resistance of 120 Ω or an unwanted-to-main-mode resistance ratio of 3 to 1, whichever is greater.

3. ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

3.1. Operable temperature range: -55°C (+0, -3°C) to +105°C (+3, -0°C).

3.2. Storage temperature range: -65°C (+0, -3°C) to +105°C (+3, -0°C).

3.3. Shock: Crystal units shall meet the test requirements of paragraph 3.5 of this specification subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 202, except for the details noted in the latest version of MIL-C-3098, method A.

**3.4. Vibration: Crystal units shall meet the test requirements of paragraph 3.5 of this specification subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 204, test condition A, except the limiting acceleration shall be 0.01 inch double amplitude or 5 *g*, whichever is less, and the details and exceptions noted in the latest version of MIL-C-3098.

3.5. Vibration and shock test requirements: Maximum permitted change in frequency and equivalent resistance shall be as follows:

Permitted frequency change: ±0.0005 percent (±5 ppm).

Permitted equivalent-resistance change: ±10 percent.

3.6. Leakage: In accordance with the latest version of MIL-C-3098.

3.7. Insulation resistance: Crystal units shall have a minimum insulation resistance of 500 MΩ subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 302, except for the details noted in the latest version of MIL-C-3098.

3.8. Immersion: Crystal units shall meet the electrical requirements of paragraphs 3.7, 2.3, and 2.6 subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 104, test condition B.

3.9. Salt spray: Crystal units shall show no visible evidence of corrosion in addition to meeting the electrical requirements of paragraphs 3.7, 2.3, and 2.6 subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 101, test condition B.

3.10. Moisture resistance: Crystal units shall meet the electrical requirements of paragraphs 3.7, 2.3, and 2.6 subsequent to testing in accordance with the latest version of MIL-STD-202, method 106, except for the details and exceptions noted in the latest version of MIL-C-3098.

3.11. Aging: The permitted change in frequency from the highest to the lowest measurements shall be 0.0005 percent (5 ppm) when tested in accordance with the latest version of MIL-C-3098 at +85°C (±2°C) for a period of 30 days.

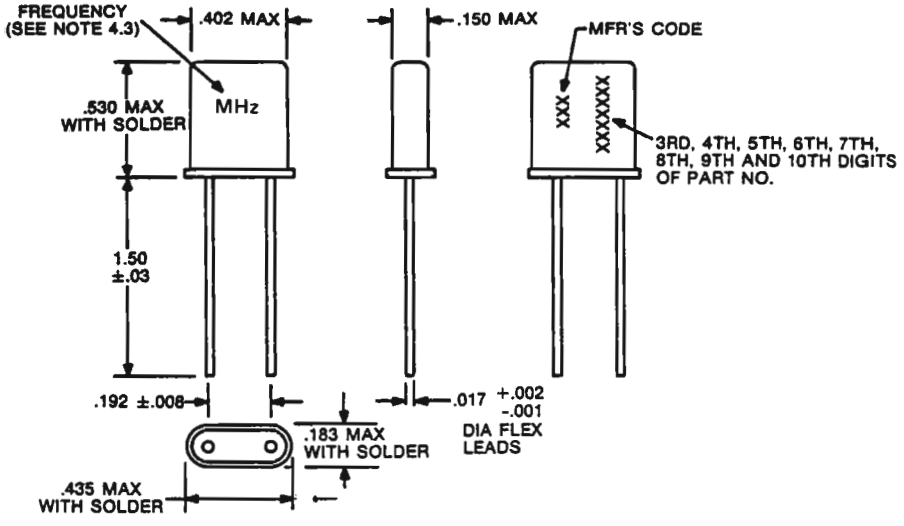


Figure L-1. HC-18/U crystal holder.

3.12. Low-temperature storage: Per latest version of MIL-C-3098.

4. MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

4.1. Holder: HC-18/U with leads tinned suitable for soldering. (See Figure L-1.)

**4.2. Markings: Shall include frequency in megahertz, purchaser's part number, manufacturer's code, and date of manufacture. Markings shall be in accordance with the latest version of MIL-C-3098.

4.3. Example crystal frequency markings:

Below 100 MHz . . . . . XX.XXXXX MHz.
100 MHz and above . . . . . XXX.XXXX MHz.

5. QUALITY ASSURANCE PROVISIONS

5.1. Receiving inspection: Each lot of material submitted to this specification will be inspected in accordance with a sampling plan approved by quality control and quality assurance departments. Acceptance of the lot will be determined upon successful measurement of the following critical and/or major characteristics:

a. Visual and mechanical inspection (external) . . . (major).
b. Frequency at room ambient and over the operating temperature range . . . (major).
c. Equivalent resistance at room ambient and over the operating temperature range . . . (major).
d. Pin-to-pin capacitance at room ambient . . . (major).

e. Unwanted modes at room ambient . . . (major).
f. Leakage, in accordance with the latest version of MIL-C-3098 . . . (major).

5.2. Quality control: Sample quantities from parts furnished on production orders may be tested to any requirement specified herein and disassembled to check for quality of workmanship by the purchaser.

5.3. Design change approval: Any deviations in the manufacturing process or materials used in preparing the component evaluation and/or engineering samples must be approved by the company's engineering division.

6. TESTING

6.1. Method of testing: The crystal unit holder shall be ungrounded when making frequency, pin-to-pin capacitance, and equivalent resistance measurement. The lead length for test shall be $\frac{1}{4}$ inch ($\pm\frac{1}{16}$ inch) from the holder base.

6.2. Test equipment: TS-683/TSM with a Radio Frequency Lab model HB8770 adaptor.

6.3. Frequency correlation: The frequency of a given crystal unit, as measured by the supplier's equivalent test set, shall agree with or be within ±0.0005 percent (±5 ppm) of the same measurement made with the Government reference standard test set, or the company's equivalent test set.

6.4. Resistance correlation: The equivalent resistance of a given crystal unit, as measured by the supplier's equivalent test set, shall agree with or be within ±10 percent of the same measurement made with the Government reference standard test set or the company's equivalent test set.

6.5. Government source inspection marking: When parts to be supplied are required to have government source inspection as indicated by the part number shown on the purchase order, said parts shall be identified as Government-inspected items by the letter "G" stamped in ink or paint on each item prior to shipment. The letter "G" shall be of sufficient size to be easily identified by a person with normal or corrected vision, but not so large that it interferes with other markings. Method of marking is optional but must be capable of withstanding abrasion and scuffing that may be encountered in normal handling and shipping.

Bibliography

1. Anderson, A. E., Frerking, M. E., and Hykes, G. R., "Temperature-Compensated Quartz Crystal Units." Report No. 10, Contract No. DA-28-043-AMC-00210(E), Department of the Army, Project No. 1G622001A05801, April 1965.
2. Armour Research Foundation, "A Study of Crystal Oscillator Circuits." Final Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-64609, August 1957, p. 37.
3. Battelle Memorial Institute, "Crystal Ovens." Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-73212, ASTIA Document No. AD210095, September 1958.
4. Bechmann, R., "Frequency-Temperature-Angle Characteristics of AT-Type Resonators Made of Natural and Synthetic Quartz." *Proc. IRE*, Vol. 44, No. 11, November 1956, pp. 1600–1607.
5. Bechmann, R., "Frequency-Temperature-Angle Characteristics of AT- and BT-Type Quartz Oscillators in an Extended Temperature Range," *Proc. IRE*, Vol. 48, No. 8, August 1960, p. 1494.
6. Buchanan, John P., *Handbook of Piezoelectric Crystals for Radio Equipment Designers.* Philco Corporation, WADC Technical Report 56-156, ASTIA Document No. AD110448.
7. Buroker, G. E. and Frerking, M. E., "A Digitally Compensated TCXO." *Proc. 27th Annu. Frequency Control Symposium*, 1973. (Also see U.S. Patent No. 3713033 by Frerking).
8. Chi, A. A., "Frequency-Temperature Behavior of AT-Cut Quartz Resonators." *Proc. 10th Annu. Symposium Frequency Control.*
9. Chow, W. F., "Crystal Controlled High Frequency Oscillators." *Semiconductor Products*, September 1959.
10. Cunningham, W. J., *Introduction to Nonlinear Analysis.* New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1958.
11. Diamond Ordnance Fuze Laboratories, "Variation of Complex *Y*-Parameters with Emitter Current and Temperature." ASTIA Document No. AD245667, October 1960.
12. Frerking, M. E., "Short Term Frequency Stability Measurements." *Proc. 21st Annu. Symposium Frequency Control*, April 1967, pp. 273–286.
13. Frerking, M. E., "Spurious Oscillation in Crystal Oscillators," *Proc. 20th Annu. Symposium Frequency Control*, April 1966, pp. 501–516.
14. Frerking, M. E., "Vector Voltmeter Crystal Measurement System." *Proc. 23rd Annu. Symposium Frequency Control*, May 1969, pp. 93–101.
15. Georgia Institute of Technology, "Transistor Oscillators of Extended Frequency Range." Final Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-42712, ASTIA Document No. AD82523, June 1955.
16. Georgia Institute of Technology, "VHF and UHF Crystal Controlled Oscillators." Quarterly and Final Reports, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-85048, ASTIA Documents Nos. 247494, 253394, 267277, June 1961.
17. Gerber, E. A., "Reduction of Frequency Temperature Shift of Piezoelectric Crystals by Application of Temperature-Dependent Pressure." *Proc. IRE*, Vol. 48, No. 2, February 1960, pp. 244 and 245.
18. Hafner, E., "Crystal Resonators." *IEEE Trans. Sonics Ultrason.*, Vol. SU-21, No. 4, October 1974.

19. Hafner, E., "The Piezoelectric Crystal Unit–Definitions and Methods of Measurement." *Proc. IEEE*, February 1969, pp. 179–201.
20. Hellerman, H., *Digital Computer System Principles.* New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1973.
21. Holford, K., "Transistor *LC* Oscillator Circuits for Low-Frequency, Low-Power Operation." *Mullard Tech. Commun.*, No. 41, December 1959.
22. Holford, K., "Transistor *LC* Oscillator Circuits Giving Modest Values of Power." *Mullard Tech. Commun.*, No. 42, February, 1960.
23. Hykes, G. R. and Newell, D. E., "A Temperature-Compensated Frequency Standard," *Proc. 15th Annu. Frequency Control Symposium*, pp. 297–317.
24. Intel Corporation, "Intel 8080 Microcomputer Systems User's Manual." Santa Clara, California, September 1975.
25. "IRE Standards on Piezoelectric Crystals–The Piezoelectric Vibrator: Definitions and Methods of Measurement." *Proc. IRE*, Vol. 45, No. 3, March 1957.
26. Johnson, George, "Power Gain and Stability in Linear Active Two-Ports." Texas Instruments RF seminar papers.
27. Koerner, L. F., "Methods of Reducing Frequency Variation in Crystals Over a Wide Temperature Range." *1956 IRE Conv. Record*, Part 8, pp. 48–54.
28. Magnavox Company, "Quartz Crystal Oscillator Circuits." First Quarterly Progress Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-88892, ASTIA Document No. AD269990, September 1961.
29. Magnavox Company, "Quartz Crystal Oscillator Circuits." Second Quarterly Progress Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-88892, ASTIA Document No. AD273873, December 1961.
30. Magnavox Company, "Quartz Crystal Oscillator Circuits," Third Quarterly Progress Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-88892, ASTIA Document No. AD278234, March 1962.
31. Magnavox Company, "Quartz Crystal Oscillator Circuits." Final Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-88892, ASTIA Document No. AD297361, June 1962.
32. Magnavox Company, "Quartz Crystal Oscillator Circuits Study," Report No. 1, Contract No. DA-36-039-AMC-00043(E), April 15, 1963.
33. McLachlan, N. W., *Bessel Functions For Engineers*, 1st Edition. Amen House, London: Oxford University Press, 1934.
34. MIL-C-3098F, 28 Nov 1972.
35. Motorola, Inc., "Transistor Crystal Oscillator Circuitry." Final Report, Contract No. DA-36-039-sc-72837, August 1957.
36. Motorola Semiconductor Products, Inc., "M6800 Microprocessor Programming Manual." Phoenix, Arizona, 1975.
37. Mroch, Alan, and Hykes, Glen, "High Stability Temperature Compensated Crystal Oscillator Study." Third Interim Report, Contract No. DAAB07-73-C-0137, Fort Monmouth, N.J., U.S. Army Electronics Command, February 1975.
38. NavShips 93484, "Selected Semiconductor Circuits." No. 73231, Transistor Applications, Inc.
39. Pritchard, R. L., "Modern High-Frequency Transistors." Paper presented at the 1957 IRE–AIEE University of Pennsylvania Transistor and Solid-State Circuits Conf.
40. Reddi, G., "Application of High Frequency *Y*-Parameters." APP-3, Mountain View, California, Fairchild Applications Data, December 1958.
41. Reich, Herbert J., *Functional Circuits and Oscillators.* Princeton, New Jersey: D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., 1961.

42. Seely, Samuel, *Electron-Tube Circuits.* New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1958, pp. 600–610.
43. Seshu, Sundaram and Balabanian, Norman, *Linear Network Analysis.* New York: John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 1959.
44. Signal Corps, "Fundamental Principles of Crystal Oscillator Design." ASTIA No. AD39664, Long Branch Signal Laboratory, U.S. Army, Circuit Section, 1945.
45. Texas Instruments Co., Engineering Staff, *Transistor Circuit Design.* New York: McGraw-Hill Company, Inc., p. 312.
46. Vitro Laboratories, "Reliable Preferred Solid-State Functional Divisions." Contract No. AF30(602)1906, ASTIA Document No. 254184, December 1959.
47. Peduto, Ralph, and Prak, Jan Willem L., "Digital IC's Set Temperature Compensation for Oscillators." *Electronics*, August 14, 1972, pp. 124–126. (Also see U.S. Patent No. 3719838 by Peduto and Prak.)
48. Wilson, G. H., "Nonlinear Analysis of Sinusoidal Oscillators," ASTIA Document No. AD272912, University of California, Electronics Research Laboratory, December 1961.
49. Basic Method for the Measurement of Resonant Frequency and Equivalent Series Resistance of Quartz Crystal Units by Zero Phase Techniques in a π-Network, IEC Publication 444 (1973).
50. Proc. 30th Annu. Symposium Frequency Control, 1976, Sponsored by U.S. Army Electronics Command, Fort Monmouth, N.J., Published by Electronic Industries Association, 2001 I Street N.W., Washington, D.C. 20006.
51. Peregrino, L. and Ricci, D., "Phase Noise Measurement Using a High Resolution Counter With On-Line Data Processing." *Proc. 30th Annu. Symposium Frequency Control*, 1976, pp. 309–317.
52. Barns, J. *et al.*, "Characterization of Frequency Stability." *IEEE Trans. Instrum. Meas.*, Vol. IM-20, No. 2, May 1971.
53. MIL-STD-683E, 26 Aug 1975.
54. Blair, B. E., *Time and Frequency: Theory and Fundamentals*," NBS Monograph 140, 1974, US Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
55. Ballato, A., "Temperature Compensated Crystal Oscillator (TCXO) Design Aids: Frequency–Temperature Resonator Characteristics as Shifted by Series Capacitors," Electronic Technology and Devices Laboratoy, ECOM.
56. Hellwig, H., Frequency Standards and Clocks: A Tutorial Introduction, NBS Technical Note 616, U.S. Department of Commerce/National Bureau of Standards, 1977.
57. Buroker, G. E., High-Stability Temperature-Compensated Crystal Oscillator Study (HSTCXO), Final Report, Contract DAAB07-71-C-0136, United States Army Electronics Command.
58. Hafner, E., Analysis and Design of Crystal Oscillators, U.S. Army Electronics Laboratories Technical Report ECOM-2474, May 1964.

Index

(Continued from front flap)

Crystal Oscillator Design contains many easy-to-use graphs and formulas which allow the designer to predict the frequency, amplitude, and harmonic content based on the small signal loop gain. Appendices provide derivations of important equations, large-signal transistor parameters, and other technical data. The book is an essential reference for electronic circuit designers in all areas of communications—radio, TV, aviation and navigation systems, and data transmission—as well as digital watches and semiconductors.

About the author . . .

Marvin E. Frerking is a member of the Senior Technical Staff at Rockwell International and is responsible for advanced planning and development of communications equipment. He has spent twelve years in the design of crystal oscillators and frequency standards. He has published numerous papers and articles in his specialty and holds numerous patents in the frequency control and communications areas.

Other Van Nostrand Reinhold Books of Related Interest

MICROPROCESSORS AND MICROCOMPUTER SYSTEMS
By **Guthikonda V. Rao,** 260 pp., 8½ x 11

A completely up-to-date report on the state of the art of microprocessors and microcomputers, written by one of America's leading experts. It thoroughly analyzes currently available equipment, including associated large scale integration hardware and firmware. Topics in the book are chosen to facilitate communication between designers, technicians, marketing and training personnel, and users.

LINEAR INTEGRATED NETWORKS
Volume 1: Fundamentals
By **George S. Moschytz,** 538 pp., illus., 6 x 9

Reflects today's growing influence of silicon semiconductor and precision passive film technology on hybrid IC technology. It provides a sound theoretical basis for understanding linear active networks. Stressed are the practical active network realizations achieved at Bell Telephone Laboratories, where the author supervised much of the advanced development and design research. Many of the examples and illustrations are based on these designs, with careful consideraiton given to the numerous design and performance trade-offs involved in developing high performance active networks using a hybrid technology.

LINEAR INTEGRATED NETWORKS
Volume 2: Design
By **George S. Moschytz,** 694 pp., illus. 6 x 9

Proceeds from actual synthesis of active networks to design of active networks in hybrid-integrated form. Encompassing a wide variety of active networks, it covers the optimization of ensuing filter cascades by pole-zero pairing techniques. Readers will appreciate the close interrelationship between the theory and practice of LIN design . . . considered a vital aspect in the book. Wherever possible considerations are given a sound theoretical foundation; likewise, theoretical discussions are firmly tied to practical experience.

THE ART AND SCIENCE OF INVENTING
By **Gilbert Kivenson,** 204 pp., illus., 6 x 9

This practical manual by an industrial research expert explains proven scientific techniques, suggests logical avenues along which to proceed with an invention, forestalls wasteful side efforts, and leads to a satisfying and business-like conclusion of each project. Offers detailed instruction in problem solving and experiment design, and explains how to protect ideas and avoid exploitation.

VAN NOSTRAND REINHOLD COMPANY
135 West 50th Street, New York, N.Y. 10020

ISBN 0-442-22459-1